Introduction
Introduction

Your vehicle is a designed combination of advanced technology, safety, environmental friendliness and economy.

This Owner’s Manual provides you with all the necessary information to enable you to drive your vehicle safely and efficiently.

Make sure your passengers are aware of the possible risk of accident and injury which may result from improper use of the vehicle.

You must always comply with the specific laws and regulations of the country that you are in. These laws may differ from the information in this Owner's Manual.

When this Owner’s Manual refers to a workshop visit, we recommend your Chevrolet Authorised Repairer.

All Chevrolet Authorised Repairers provide first-class service at reasonable prices. Experienced mechanics trained by Chevrolet work according to specific Chevrolet instructions.

The customer literature pack should always be kept ready to hand in the vehicle.

Using this manual

■ This manual describes all options and features available for this model. Certain descriptions, including those for display and menu functions, may not apply to your vehicle due to model variant, country specifications, special equipment or accessories.

■ The "In brief" section will give you an initial overview.

■ The table of contents at the beginning of this manual and within each chapter shows where the information is located.

■ The index will enable you to search for specific information.

■ This Owner’s Manual depicts left-hand drive vehicles. Operation is similar for right-hand drive vehicles.

■ The Owner’s Manual uses the factory engine designations. The corresponding sales designations can be found in the chapter "Technical data".

■ Directional data, e.g. left or right, or front or back, always relate to the direction of travel.

■ The vehicle display screens may not support your specific language.

■ Display messages and interior labelling are written in bold letters.

Danger, Warnings and Cautions

⚠️ Danger

Text marked ⚠️ Danger provides information on risk of fatal injury. Disregarding this information may endanger life.
## Warning

Text marked **Warning** provides information on risk of accident or injury. Disregarding this information may lead to injury.

## Caution

Text marked **Caution** provides information on possible damage to the vehicle. Disregarding this information may lead to vehicle damage.

### Symbols

Page references are indicated with 🔗. 

🔗 means "see page".

We wish you many hours of pleasurable driving

**Chevrolet**
In brief

Initial drive information

Vehicle unlocking

Radio remote control

Press button  to unlock the doors and load compartment. Open the doors by pulling the handles. To open the tailgate, press the button under the tailgate moulding.

Press button  , only the load compartment is unlocked and opens.

Radio remote control  20, Central locking system  23, Load compartment  27.

Electronic key

When in possession of the electronic key, press switch on door handle to unlock the vehicle and pull the door handle to open the door. To open the tailgate, press the button under the moulding.

Electronic key system  22.
Seat adjustment

Seat positioning

Pull handle, slide seat, release handle.

Seat adjustment 39, Seat position 38.

Seat backrests

Pull lever, adjust inclination and release lever. Allow the seat to engage audibly.

Seat adjustment 39, Seat position 38.

Seat height

Lever pumping motion

up = higher

down = lower

Seats 39, Seat position 38.
Head restraint adjustment

For height adjustment, pull the head restraint upward. To move down press the catch and push the head restraint downwards.

To adjust horizontally, pull the head restraint forwards and engage in one of three positions. To return to its rearmost position, pull fully forwards and release.

Head restraints 37.

Seat belt

Pull out the seat belt and engage in belt buckle. The seat belt must not be twisted and must fit close against the body. The backrest must not be tilted back too far (maximum approx. 25 °).

To release belt, press red button on belt buckle.

Seat belts 41, Airbag system 44, Seat position 38.
Mirror adjustment

Interior mirror

Adjust the lever on the underside to reduce dazzle.
Interior mirror 33, Automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror 33.

Exterior mirrors

Select the relevant exterior mirror and adjust.

Steering wheel adjustment

Unlock lever, adjust steering wheel, then engage lever and ensure it is fully locked. Do not adjust steering wheel unless vehicle is stationary and steering wheel lock has been released.
Airbag system 44, Ignition positions 217.
Instrument panel overview
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Light switch</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Front fog lights</td>
<td>103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Rear fog light</td>
<td>103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Instrument illumination</td>
<td>104</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Side air vents</td>
<td>213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Turn signals, headlight flash, low beam and high beam</td>
<td>102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Exit lighting</td>
<td>105</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Parking light</td>
<td>103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Driver Information Centre</td>
<td>81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Instruments</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Horn</td>
<td>67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Driver's airbag</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Driver Information Centre</td>
<td>81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Steering wheel controls</td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Windscreen wipers, windscreen washer system, rear wiper, rear washer system</td>
<td>67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>Centre air vents</td>
<td>213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Infotainment system</td>
<td>107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>Info-Display</td>
<td>84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>Anti-theft alarm system status LED</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>Storage</td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>Front passenger airbag</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>Glovebox</td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>Control indicator for airbag deactivation and seat belt reminder</td>
<td>77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>Heating, Ventilation, Climate control system</td>
<td>206</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>Traction control system</td>
<td>228</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Electronic Stability Control</td>
<td>229</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ECO button for stop-start system</td>
<td>219</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>Selector lever, automatic transmission</td>
<td>224</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Manual transmission</td>
<td>226</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>Hazard warning flashers</td>
<td>102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>Central locking system</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>Accelerator pedal</td>
<td>216</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>Start/Stop button</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Electronic key system</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>Brake pedal</td>
<td>227</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>Ignition switch with steering wheel lock</td>
<td>217</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>Clutch pedal</td>
<td>216</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>Steering wheel adjustment</td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td>Cruise Control</td>
<td>230</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29</td>
<td>Storage compartment, fuse box</td>
<td>267</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>Bonnet release lever</td>
<td>241</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Exterior lighting

Turn light switch

AUTO = automatic light control:
Headlights are switched on and off automatically

= activation or deactivation of the automatic light control

= sidelights

= headlights

On vehicles without automatic light control:

= off

Press light switch

= front fog lights

= rear fog light

Lighting  100.

Headlight flash, high beam and low beam

headlight flash = pull lever
high beam = push lever
low beam = push or pull lever

High beam  101, Headlight flash  101, Automatic light control  100.
In brief

**Turn and lane-change signals**

right  = lever up
left  = lever down

Turn and lane change signals 102, Parking lights 103.

**Hazard warning flashers**

Operated with the button.
Hazard warning flashers 102.

**Horn**

Press .
Washer and wiper systems

Windscreen wipers

2 = fast
1 = slow
\(\equiv\) = timed interval wiping or automatic wiping with rain sensor
\(\bigcirc\) = off

For a single wipe when the windscreen wipers are off, press the lever down.
Windscreen wipers \(\bigcirc\) 67, Wiper replacement \(\bigcirc\) 254.

Windscreen washer system

Pull lever.
Windscreen washer system \(\bigcirc\) 67, Washer fluid \(\bigcirc\) 251.

Rear window wiper and washer systems

Press the rocker switch to activate the rear window wiper:
upper position = continuous operation
lower position = intermittent operation
middle position = off

Rear window wiper/washer \(\bigcirc\) 69.
In brief

Push lever.  
Washer fluid is sprayed on the rear window and the wiper wipes a few times.

Climate control

Heated rear window, heated exterior mirrors

Heating is operated by pressing the button.
Heated rear window 35.

Demisting and defrosting the windows

Press button .
Set temperature control to warmest level.
Cooling on.
Heated rear window on.
Climate control system 206.
Transmission

Manual transmission

Reverse: with the vehicle stationary, depress the clutch pedal, pull up the ring on the selector lever and engage the gear.

If the gear does not engage, set the lever to neutral, release the clutch pedal and depress again; then repeat gear selection.

Manual transmission  226.

Automatic transmission

P = park
R = reverse
N = neutral
D = drive

Manual mode: move selector lever from D to the left.
  + = higher gear
  - = lower gear

The selector lever can only be moved out of P when the ignition is on and the brake pedal is applied. To engage P or R, push the release button.

Automatic transmission  224.

Starting off

Check before starting off

- Tyre pressure and condition  270,  315.
- Engine oil level and fluid levels  249.
- All windows, mirrors, exterior lighting and number plates are free from dirt, snow and ice and are operational.
- Proper position of seats, seat belts and mirrors  38,  42,  32.
- Check brake function at low speed, particularly if the brakes are wet.
Starting engine with the ignition switch

- Turn key to position 1.
- Move the steering wheel slightly to release the steering wheel lock.
- Manual transmission: depress the clutch pedal.
- Automatic transmission: depress brake pedal and move the selector lever to P or N.
- Do not accelerate.

- Diesel engine: turn the key to position 2 for preheating until control indicator ![extinguishes.
- Turn key to position 3 and release when engine is running.
Before restarting or to switch off the engine, turn key back to 0.

Starting engine with the Start/Stop button

- The electronic key must be inside the vehicle.
- Manual transmission: depress the clutch pedal.
- Automatic transmission: depress the brake pedal and move the selector lever to P or N.
- Do not accelerate.
- Press the Start/Stop button and release when the engine is running. The green LED will illuminate as soon as the engine is running.
To switch off the engine, press the button again whilst the engine is running.
Starting the engine ◇ 217.

Stop-start system

If the vehicle is at a low speed or at a standstill and certain conditions are fulfilled, activate Autostop as follows:
- Depress the clutch pedal
- set the lever in neutral
- release the clutch pedal
An Autostop is indicated by the needle at the AUTOSTOP position in the tachometer.
To restart the engine, depress the clutch pedal again.
Stop-start system ◇ 219.

Parking
- Always apply the parking brake without pressing the release button. Apply as firmly as possible on a downhill slope or uphill slope. Depress the foot brake at the same time to reduce operating force.
- Switch off the engine. Turn the ignition key to 0 and remove it. Turn the steering wheel until the steering wheel lock is felt to engage. Vehicles with electronic key system: with the vehicle stationary, press the Start/Stop button and open the driver’s door.
For vehicles with automatic transmission, move selector lever to P position and remove key.
- If the vehicle is on a level surface or uphill slope, engage first gear or set the selector lever to P before switching off the ignition. On an uphill slope, turn the front wheels away from the kerb.
If the vehicle is on a downhill slope, engage reverse gear or set the selector lever to P before switching
off the ignition. Turn the front wheels towards the kerb.

- Close windows and sunroof.
- Lock the vehicle with button on the remote control or, with electronic key system, touch the sensor on the door handle.
- Activate the anti-theft alarm system 29.
- Do not park the vehicle on an easily flammable surface. The high temperature of the exhaust system could ignite the surface.
- The engine cooling fans may run after the engine has been switched off 241.
- After running at high engine speeds or with high engine loads, operate the engine briefly at a low load or run for about 1 or 2 minutes at idle speed before switching off in order to protect the turbocharger.

Keys, locks 20.
Keys, doors and windows

Keys, locks

Keys

Replacement keys
The key number is specified on a detachable tag.
The key number must be quoted when ordering replacement keys as it is a component of the immobiliser system.

Locks  287.

Key with foldaway key section

Press button to extend. To fold the key, first press the button.

Radio remote control

Used to operate:
- Central locking system
- Anti-theft alarm system
- Load compartment

The radio remote control has an approximate range of up to 25 metres. This range can be affected by outside influences.
The hazard warning flashers confirm operation.
Handle with care, protect from moisture and high temperatures and avoid unnecessary operation.

**Fault**
If the central locking system cannot be operated with the radio remote control, it may be due to the following:
- Range exceeded,
- Battery voltage too low,
- Frequent, repeated operation of the remote control while not in range, which will require resynchronisation,
- Overload of the central locking system by operating at frequent intervals, the power supply is interrupted for a short time,
- Interference from higher-power radio waves from other sources.

Unlocking the vehicle  23.

**Basic settings**
Some settings can be changed in the menu **Settings** in the Info-Display.
**Vehicle personalisation**  90.

**Radio remote control battery replacement**
Replace the battery as soon as the range is noticeably diminished.
Batteries do not belong in household waste. They must be disposed of at an appropriate recycling collection point.

**Key with foldaway key section**
Extend the key and open the unit. Replace the battery (battery type CR 2032), paying attention to the installation position. Close the unit and synchronise.

**Key with fixed key section**
Have the battery replaced by a workshop.
Memorised settings
Whenever the key is removed from the ignition lock the following settings are automatically remembered by the key:
- Electronic climate control
- Lighting
- Infotainment system
- Central locking system
The saved settings are automatically used next time the key is inserted into the ignition lock.
Vehicle personalisation 90.

Electronic key system
Makes operation of the following possible without the use of the mechanical key
- Central locking system
- Anti-theft alarm system
- Ignition and starter
The electronic key simply needs to be on the driver's person.

Note
Do not put the electronic key in the load compartment or in front of the Info-Display.
Starting the engine 217.

Radio remote control
The electronic key also has a radio remote control feature.

Replacing battery in electronic key
Replace the battery as soon as the system no longer operates properly or the range is reduced. The need for battery replacement is indicated by an error code in the Driver Information Center 87.
Batteries do not belong in household waste. They must be disposed of at an appropriate recycling collection point.

Radio remote control battery replacement

Replace the battery (battery type CR 2032), noting the installation position. Engage caps.

Radio remote control synchronisation

The radio remote control synchronises itself automatically during every starting procedure.

Fault

If the central locking cannot be operated or the engine cannot be started, the cause may be one of the following:

- Fault in remote control, ◊ 20,
- Electronic key out of reception range,
- Battery voltage too low,
- Interference from higher-power radio waves from other sources.

To rectify the cause of the fault, change the position of the electronic key.

Central locking system

Unlocks and locks doors, load compartment and fuel filler flap. A pull on an interior door handle unlocks and opens the door.

Note

In the event of an accident of a certain severity, the vehicle unlocks automatically.

Unlocking

Radio remote control

Press button ◊.

Two settings are possible:

- To unlock only the driver's door, press button ◊ once, to unlock all doors, load compartment and fuel filler flap, press button ◊ twice.
- To unlock all doors, load compartment and fuel filler flap, press button ◊ once.

Settings can be changed in the menu Settings in the Info-Display. Vehicle personalisation ◊ 90.
The settings can be stored by the key being used, Memorised settings ◊ 22.

Electronic key system

Press switch on a door handle to unlock the vehicle and pull the door handle to open the door, or press the button under the trunk lid moulding.

The electronic key must be outside the vehicle within a range of approximately one metre of the relevant door side.

It is configurable to unlock only the doors on the relevant side or all doors.

Settings can be changed in the menu Settings in the Info-Display. Vehicle personalisation ◊ 90.

Locking

Radio remote control

Close doors, load compartment and fuel filler flap.

Press button ⪪.

If the driver's door is not closed properly, the central locking system will not work. Vehicle personalisation ◊ 90.

Electronic key system

Close doors, load compartment and fuel filler flap.

Press the switch on a door handle.

The electronic key must be outside the vehicle, within a range of approximately one metre to the relevant door. The spare electronic key must not be inside the vehicle.

If the vehicle has been locked, it can be checked by pressing the button and pulling the handle within three seconds, whether the vehicle is locked or not.
Note
The vehicle is not automatically locked.

Unlocking the tailgate

5-doors hatchback, Station wagon

Press button \(c\) once or twice, depending on the selected setting. The tailgate will unlock. Vehicle personalisation \(\Rightarrow 90\).

4-doors

Press button \(\bigcirc\). The tailgate will unlock and open, whilst all other doors remain locked.

Electronic key system

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Caution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>When all doors are locked, the load compartment can be unlocked by using the electronic key. Since then, if you close the tailgate with the electronic key left inside of the load compartment, the driver's door and the tailgate will be unlocked and a warning chime will sound.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Central locking buttons
Locks or unlocks all doors, the load compartment and fuel filler flap.

Press the \(\bigcirc\) button to lock. Press the \(\bigcirc\) button to unlock. When the key is in the ignition lock, locking is only possible if all doors are closed.
Fault in radio remote control system or electronic key system

Unlocking

Manually unlock the driver's door by turning the key in the lock. Switch on the ignition and press the central locking button to unlock all doors, load compartment and fuel filler flap. To deactivate the anti-theft locking system, switch on the ignition.

Locking
Switch on the ignition and press the central locking button to lock the doors, load compartment and fuel filler flap. Then close the driver's door and lock it from the outside with the key.

Fault in central locking system

Unlocking
Manually unlock the driver's door by turning the key in the lock. The other doors can be opened by using the interior handle twice. The fuel filler flap cannot be opened. To deactivate the anti-theft locking system, switch on the ignition.

Unlocking the tailgate

Pull the handle on the inside of the tailgate.

Locking
Push down the locking pins of all doors except driver's door. Then close the driver's door and lock it from the outside with the key. The fuel filler flap and tailgate cannot be locked.

Child locks

Unlocking

Unlock the tailgate

Locking

Child locks

Unlocking

Unlock the tailgate

Locking

**⚠️ Warning**

Use the child locks whenever children are occupying the rear seats.

Using a key or suitable screwdriver, turn the child locks in the rear doors into horizontal position. Doors cannot be opened from inside. For deactivation turn the child locks into vertical position.

---

### Doors

#### Load compartment

#### Tailgate

**Opening**

5-doors Hatchback, Station wagon

![Tailgate image]

After unlocking, push the button below the handle or under the tailgate moulding and open the tailgate.

4-doors

---

### Danger

Do not drive with the tailgate open or ajar, e.g. when transporting bulky objects, since toxic exhaust gases, which can not be seen or smelled, could enter the vehicle. This can cause unconsciousness and even death.

---

Push button 📣 on radio remote control until the tailgate is opened, or push the button under the tailgate moulding after unlocking.
Caution
Before opening the tailgate check overhead obstructions, such as a garage door, to avoid damage of the tailgate. Always check the moving area above and behind the tailgate.

Note
The installation of certain heavy accessories onto the tailgate may affect its ability to remain open.

Closing
Do not push the button under the moulding or under the handle whilst closing as this will unlock the tailgate again.

Use the interior handle.

Vehicle security

Anti-theft locking system

⚠️ Warning
Do not use the system if there are people in the vehicle! The doors cannot be unlocked from the inside.

The system deadlocks all the doors. All doors must be closed or the system cannot be activated.

If the ignition was on, the driver's door must be opened and closed once so that the vehicle can be secured.

Unlocking the vehicle disables the mechanical anti-theft locking system. This is not possible with the central locking button.
Activating

Press 3 on the radio remote control twice within 15 seconds.

Anti-theft alarm system

The anti-theft alarm system incorporates and is operated in conjunction with the anti-theft locking system.

It monitors:
- Doors, tailgate, bonnet
- Passenger compartment including adjoining load compartment

Activation

- Vehicle inclination, e.g. if it is raised
- Ignition

- Self-activated 30 seconds after locking the vehicle (initialisation of the system), or
- Radio remote control: directly by pressing 3 once more after locking, or
- Electronic key system: directly by pressing the switch in the door handle once more after locking.

Note

Changes to the vehicle interior such as the use of seat covers, and open windows or sunroof, could impair the function of passenger compartment monitoring.
Keys, doors and windows

Activation without monitoring of passenger compartment and vehicle inclination

Switch off the monitoring of passenger compartment and vehicle inclination when animals are being left in the vehicle, because of high volume ultrasonic signals or movements triggering the alarm. Also switch off when the vehicle is on a ferry or train.

1. Close tailgate, bonnet, windows and sunroof.
2. Press button 🕔. LED in the button 🕒 illuminates.
3. Close doors.
4. Activate the anti-theft alarm system.

Status LED

Status LED is integrated in the sensor on top of the instrument panel.
Status during the first 30 seconds of anti-theft alarm system activation:
- LED illuminates = test, arming delay.
- LED flashes quickly = doors, tailgate or bonnet not completely closed, or system fault.

Status after system is armed:
- LED flashes slowly = system is armed.

Seek the assistance of a workshop in the event of faults.

Deactivation

Unlocking the vehicle by pressing button 🗝️ deactivates anti-theft alarm system.
Vehicles with electronic key system: Pressing the switch on the door handle deactivates anti-theft alarm system.

**Alarm**
When triggered, the alarm sounds via a separate battery-backed power sounder, and the hazard warning lights flash simultaneously. The number and duration of alarm signals are stipulated by legislation.

The alarm can be silenced by pressing any button of the radio remote control or by switching on the ignition.

The anti-theft alarm system can be deactivated only by pressing the button or by pressing the switch on the door handle (only electronic key system) or switching on the ignition.

**Immobiliser**
The system is integrated into the ignition switch and checks whether the vehicle is allowed to start with the key being used. If the transponder in the key is recognised, the vehicle can be started.

The immobiliser activates itself automatically after the key has been removed from the ignition switch.

If the control indicator flashes or illuminates when the ignition is on, there is a fault in the system; the engine cannot be started. Switch off the ignition and then repeat the start attempt.

If the control indicator continues flashing or illuminating, attempt to start the engine using the spare key and seek the assistance of a workshop.

**Note**
The immobiliser does not lock the doors. You should always lock the vehicle after leaving it and switch on the anti-theft alarm system 23, 29.

Control indicator 31.
**Exterior mirrors**

**Convex shape**
The convex exterior mirror reduces blind spots. The shape of the mirror makes objects appear smaller, which will affect the ability to estimate distances.

**Electric adjustment**

Select the relevant exterior mirror by turning the control to left (L) or right (R). Then swivel the control to adjust the mirror.

In position 0 no mirror is selected.

**Folding mirrors**

For pedestrian safety, the exterior mirrors will swing out of their normal mounting position if they are struck with sufficient force. Reposition the mirror by applying slight pressure to the mirror housing.

**Electric folding**

Turn control to 0, then push the control down. Both exterior mirrors will fold.

Push the control down again - both exterior mirrors return to their original position.

If an electrically folded mirror is manually extended, pressing down the control will only electrically extend the other mirror.
Heated mirrors

Operated by pressing the button. Heating works with the engine running and is switched off automatically after a short time.

Interior mirrors

Manual anti-dazzle

To reduce dazzle, pull the lever on the underside of the mirror housing.

Automatic anti-dazzle

Dazzle from following vehicles at night is automatically reduced.
Windows

Windscreen

Heat-reflecting windscreen
The heat-reflecting windscreen has a coating which reflects solar radiation. Also data signals, e.g. from toll stations, might be reflected.

The marked areas on the windscreen are not covered with the coating. Devices for electronic data recording and fee payment must be attached in these areas. Otherwise data recording malfunctions may occur.

Windscreen stickers
Do not attach stickers such as toll road stickers or similar on the windscreen in the area of the interior mirror. Otherwise the detection zone of the sensor and the view area of the camera in the mirror housing could be restricted.

Manual windows
The door windows can be opened or closed with the window winders.

Power windows

⚠️ Warning
Take care when operating the power windows. Risk of injury, particularly to children.
If there are children on the rear seat, switch on the child safety system for the power windows.

Operate the switch for the respective window by pushing to open or pulling to close.

Keep a close watch on the windows when closing them. Ensure that nothing becomes trapped in them as they move.

Power windows can be operated
- with ignition on,
- within 10 minutes after switching ignition off until a door is opened.

After switching off the ignition, window operation is disabled when a front door is opened.
Operation
Pushing or pulling gently to the first detent: window moves down or up as long as the switch is operated.
Pushing or pulling firmly to the second detent and then releasing: window moves down automatically.
To stop movement, operate the switch once more in the same direction.

Child safety system for rear windows

Press switch 🗝️ to deactivate rear door power windows, the LED lights up. To activate press 🗝️ again.

Overload
If the windows are repeatedly operated within short intervals, the window operation is disabled for some time.

Initialising the power windows
If the windows cannot be opened automatically (e.g. after disconnecting the vehicle battery), activate the window electronics as follows:
1. Close doors.
2. Switch on ignition.
3. Close the window completely and keep the switch pulled for additional 2 seconds.
4. Repeat for each window.

Heated rear window
Operated by pressing the 🪐 button.
Heating works with the engine running and is switched off automatically after a short time.

Sun visors
The sun visors can be folded down or swivelled to the side to prevent dazzling.
If the sun visors have integral mirrors, the mirror covers should be closed when driving.
Roof

Sunroof

⚠️ Warning
Take care when operating the sunroof. Risk of injury, particularly to children.
Keep a close watch on the movable parts when operating them. Ensure that nothing becomes trapped in them as they move.

Sunroof can be operated
- with ignition on,
- within 10 minutes after switching ignition off.
After switching off the ignition, sunroof operation is disabled when a front door is opened.

Open or close
Press 📽️ or 📽️ gently to the first detent: sunroof is opened or closed as long as the switch is operated.
Press 📽️ or 📽️ firmly to the second detent and then release: the sunroof is opened or closed automatically with enabled safety function. To stop movement, operate the switch once more.

Raise or close
Press 📽️ or 📽️: sunroof is raised or closed automatically.

Sunblind
The sunblind is operated manually. Close or open the sunblind by sliding. When the sunroof is open, the sunblind is always open.

General hints

Safety function
If the sunroof encounters resistance during automatic closing, it is immediately stopped and opened again.

Override safety function
In the event of closing difficulties due to frost or the like, hold the switch pressed to the second detent. The sunroof closes without safety function. To stop movement, release the switch.

Initialising after a power failure
After a power failure, it may only be possible to operate the sunroof to a limited extent. Have the system initialised by your workshop.
Head restraints

Position

⚠️ Warning

Only drive with the head restraint set to the proper position.

The upper edge of the head restraint should be at upper head level. If this is not possible for extremely tall people, set to highest position, and set to lowest position for small people.

Head restraints on front seats

Height adjustment

Pull the head restraint upwards. To move down press the catch and push the head restraint downwards.
Horizontal adjustment
To adjust horizontally, pull the head restraint forwards and engage in one of three positions.
To return to its rearmost position, pull fully forwards and release.

Head restraints on rear seats
Height adjustment
Pull the head restraint upwards.
To move down press the catch and push the head restraint downwards.

Front seats
Seat position

⚠️ Warning
Only drive with the seat correctly adjusted.

- Sit with buttocks as far back against the backrest as possible. Adjust the distance between the seat and the pedals so that legs are slightly angled when pressing the pedals. Slide the front passenger seat as far back as possible.
**Seat adjustment**

- **Danger**
  Do not sit nearer than 25 cm to the steering wheel, to permit safe airbag deployment.

- **Warning**
  Never adjust seats while driving as they could move uncontrollably.

**Seat positioning**

- Pull handle, slide seat, release handle.

**Seat backrests**

- Pull lever, adjust inclination and release lever. Allow the seat to engage audibly.
Seat height

Lever pumping motion
up  =  seat higher
down  =  seat lower

Armrest

Armrest between front seats
Push button and fold armrest upward. The open armrest contains a stowage compartment.

Horizontal adjustment

Push lever to slide the armrest.

Heating

Activate front seat heating by pressing the button in the control knob for temperature (left seat) or fan speed (right seat) one or more times with the ignition on. The number of LEDs in the button indicates the setting.

Prolonged use of the highest setting for people with sensitive skin is not recommended.

Seat heating is operational when the engine is running and during an Autostop.

Stop-start system  219.
Rear seats

Armrest

Fold armrest down by pulling the strap. The folded armrest contains a drink holder.

Seat belts

The belts are locked during heavy acceleration or deceleration of the vehicle for the safety of the occupants.

⚠️ Warning

Fasten seat belt before each trip. In the event of an accident, people not wearing seat belts endanger their fellow occupants and themselves.

Seat belts are designed to be used by only one person at a time. Child restraint system 50.

Periodically check all parts of the belt system for damage, pollution and proper functionality.

Have damaged components replaced. After an accident, have the belts and triggered belt tensioners replaced by a workshop.

Note

Make sure that the belts are not damaged by shoes or sharp-edged objects or trapped. Prevent dirt from getting into the belt retractors.

Seat belt reminder 76.

Belt force limiters

In the front seats, stress on the body is reduced by the gradual release of the belt during a collision.
Belt tensioners

In the event of a head-on or rear-end collision of a certain severity, the front seat belts are tightened.

⚠️ Warning
Incorrect handling (e.g. removal or fitting of belts or belt buckles) can trigger the belt tensioners with risk of injury.

Deployment of the belt tensioners is indicated by illumination of control indicator ⚡ 76.

Triggered belt tensioners must be replaced by a workshop. Belt tensioners can only be triggered once.

**Note**
Do not affix or install accessories or other objects that may interfere with the operation of the belt tensioners. Do not make any modifications to belt tensioner components as this will invalidate the vehicle type approval.

Three-point seat belt

Fastening

Withdraw the belt from the retractor, guide it untwisted across the body and insert the latch plate into the buckle. Tighten the lap belt regularly whilst driving by pulling the shoulder belt. Seat belt reminder ⚡ 76.

Loose or bulky clothing prevents the belt from fitting snugly. Do not place objects such as handbags or mobile phones between the belt and your body.
**Warning**

The belt must not rest against any objects in the pockets of your clothing.

**Height adjustment**

1. Pull belt out slightly.
2. Press button.
3. Adjust height and engage.

Adjust the height so that the belt lies across the shoulder. It must not lie across the throat or upper arm. Do not adjust while driving.

**Removing**

To release belt, press red button on belt buckle.

**Seat belts on the rear seats**

The three point seat belt for the rear centre seat can only be withdrawn from the retractor if the backrest is in the rear position.
Using the seat belt while pregnant

![Image of a pregnant woman wearing a seat belt]

**Warning**
The lap belt must be positioned as low as possible across the pelvis to prevent pressure on the abdomen.

---

**Airbag system**

The airbag system consists of a number of individual systems.

When triggered the airbags inflate within milliseconds. They also deflate so quickly that it is often unnoticeable during the collision.

**Warning**
If handled improperly the airbag systems can be triggered in an explosive manner.

**Note**
The airbag systems and belt tensioner control electronics are located in the centre console area. Do not put any magnetic objects in this area.

Do not stick anything on the airbag covers and do not cover them with other materials.

Each airbag is triggered only once. Have deployed airbags replaced by a workshop.

---

Do not make any modifications to the airbag system as this will invalidate the vehicle type approval. In the event of airbag deployment have the steering wheel, the instrument panel, all panelling parts, the door seals, the handles and the seats removed by a workshop.

Control indicator 🟢 for airbag systems ⬜ 76.

**Child restraint systems on front passenger seat with airbag systems**

Warning according to ECE R94.02:
EN: NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.

DE: Nach hinten gerichtete Kindersitze NIEMALS auf einem Sitz verwenden, der durch einen davor befindlichen AKTIVEN AIRBAG geschützt ist, da dies den TOD oder SCHwere VERletzungen des Kindes zur Folge haben kann.

FR: NE JAMAIS utiliser un siège d'enfant orienté vers l'arrière sur un siège protégé par un COUSSIN GONFLABLE ACTIF placé devant lui, sous peine d'infliger des BLESSURES GRAVES, voire MORTELLES à l'ENFANT.

ES: NUNCA utilice un sistema de retención infantil orientado hacia atrás en un asiento protegido por un AIRBAG FRONTAL ACTIVO. Peligro de MUERTE o LESIONES GRAVES para el NIÑO.

RU: ЗАПРЕЩАЕТСЯ устанавливать детское удерживающее устройство лицом назад на сиденье автомобиля, оборудованном фронтальной подушкой безопасности, если ПОДУШКА НЕ ОТКЛЮЧЕНА! Это может привести к СМЕРТИ или СЕРЬЕЗным ТРАВМАМ РЕБЕНКА.

NL: Gebruik NOOIT een achterwaarts gericht kinderzitje op een stoel met een ACTIEVE AIRBAG ervoor, om DODELIJK of ERNSTIG LETSEL van het KIND te voorkomen.

DA: Brug ALDRIG en bagudvendt autostol på et forsæde med AKTIV AIRBAG, BARNET kan komme i LIVSFARE eller komme ALVORLIGT TIL SKADE.

SV: Använd ALDRIG en bakåtvänd barnstol på ett sätte som skyddas med en framförvarande AKTIV AIRBAG. DÖDSFALL eller ALLVARLIGA SKADOR kan drabba BARNET.

FI: ÄLÄ KOSKAAN sijoita taaksepäin suunnattua lasten turvaistuinta istuimelle, jonka edessä on AKTIIVINEN TURVATYYNY, LAPSIVOI KUOLLA tai VAMMAUTUA VAKAVASTI.

NO: Bakovervendt barnesikringsutstyr må ALDRI brukes på et sete med AKTIV KOLLISJONSPUTE foran, da det kan føre til at BARNET utsettes for LIVSFARE og fare for ALVORLIGE SKADER.

PT: NUNCA use um sistema de retenção para crianças voltado para trás num banco protegido com um AIRBAG ACTIVO na frente do mesmo, poderá ocorrer a PERDA DE VIDA ou FERIMENTOS GRAVES na CRIANÇA.

IT: Non usare mai un sistema di sicurezza per bambini rivolto all’indietro su un sedile protetto da AIRBAG ATTIVO di fronte ad esso: pericolo di MORTE o LESIONI GRAVI per il BAMBINO!

EL: ΠΟΤΕ μη χρησιμοποιείτε παιδικό κάθισμα ασφαλείας με φορά προς τα πίσω σε κάθισμα που προστατεύεται από μετωπικό ΕΝΕΡΓΟ ΑΕΡΟΣΑΚΟ, διότι το παιδί μπορεί να υποστεί ΘΑΝΑΣΙΜΟ ή ΣΟΒΑΡΟ ΤΡΑΥΜΑΤΙΣΜΟ.
Seats, restraints

PL: NIE WOLNO montować fotelika dziecięcego zwróconego tylem do kierunku jazdy na fotelu, przed którym znajduje się WŁĄCZONA PODUSZKA POWIETRZNA. Niezastosowanie się do tego zalecenia może być przyczyną ŚMIERCI lub POWAŻNYCH OBRAŻEŃ u DZIECKA.

HU: SOHA ne használjon hátrafelé néző biztonsági gyerekülést előlről AKTÍV LÉGSÁKKAL védett ülésen, mert a GYERMEK HALÁLÁT vagy KOMOLY SÉRÜLÉSÉT okozhatja.

HR: NIKADA nemojte koristiti sustav zadržavanja za djecu okrenut prema natrag na sjedalu s AKTIVNIM ZRAČNIM JASTUKOM ispred njega, to bi moglo dovesti do SMRTI ili OZBILJNIH OZLJEDA za DIJETE.

SL: NIKOLI ne nameščajte otroškega varnostnega sedeža, obrnjenega v nasprotni smeri vožnje, na sedež z AKTIVNO ČELNO ZRAČNO BLAZINO, saj pri tem obstaja nevarnost RESNIH ali SMRTNIH POŠKODB za OTROKA.

BG: НИКОГА не използвайте детска седалка, гледаща назад, върху седалка, която е защитена чрез АКТИВНА ВЪЗДУШНА ВЪЗГЛАВНИЦА пред нея - може да се стигне до СМЪРТ или СЕРИОЗНО НАРАНЯВАНЕ на ДЕТЕTO.

RO: Nu utilizați NICIODATĂ un scaun pentru copil îndreptat spre partea din spate a mașinii pe un scaun protejat de un AIRBAG ACTIV în fața sa; acest lucru poate duce la DECESUL sau VĂTĂMAREA GRAVĂ a COPIILUI.

CS: NIKDY nepoužívejte dětský zádržný systém instalovaný proti směru jízdy na sedadle, které je chráňeno před sedadlem AKTIVNÍM AIRBAGEM. Mohlo by dojít k VÁŽNÉMU PORANĚNÍ nebo ÚMRTÍ DÍTĚTE.
### Danger

Do not use a child restraint system on the passenger seat with active front airbag.

Airbag deactivation ⦿ 49.

---

### Warning

Optimum protection is only provided when the seat is in the proper position ⦿ 38.

Keep the area in which the airbag inflates clear of obstructions.

Wear the seat belt properly fastened. Only then the airbag is able to protect.

---

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Seats, restraints</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**Front airbag system**

The front airbag system consists of one airbag in the steering wheel and one in the instrument panel on the passenger side. These can be identified by the word **AIRBAG**.

The front airbag system is triggered in the event of an accident of a certain severity. The ignition must be on.

---

Beyond the warning required by ECE R94.02, for safety reasons neither use a forward facing child restraint system on the passenger seat with active front airbag.
Side airbag system

The side airbag system consists of an airbag in each front seat backrest. This can be identified by the word **AIRBAG**.
The side airbag system is triggered in the event of an accident of a certain severity. The ignition must be on.

- **Warning**
  - Keep the area in which the airbag inflates clear of obstructions.

- **Note**
  - Only use protective seat covers that have been approved for your vehicle. Be careful not to cover the airbags.

Curtain airbag system

The curtain airbag system consists of an airbag in the roof frame on each side. This can be identified by the word **AIRBAG** on the roof pillars.
The curtain airbag system is triggered in the event of an accident of a certain severity. The ignition must be on.
The risk of injury to the head in the event of a side impact is considerably reduced.

**Warning**

Keep the area in which the airbag inflates clear of obstructions.
The hooks on the handles in the roof frame are only suitable for hanging up light articles of clothing, without coat hangers. Do not keep any items in these clothes.

**Airbag deactivation**

Front airbag and side airbag systems for the front passenger seat have to be deactivated if a child restraint system is to be fitted on this seat. The curtain airbag system, the belt tensioners and all driver airbag systems will remain active.

Front passenger airbag system can be deactivated via a lock on the side of the instrument panel, visible when the front passenger door is open.

**Warning**

Deactivate front passenger airbag system when the front passenger seat is occupied by a child. Activate front passenger airbag system when an adult is on the front passenger seat.

Use the ignition key to choose the position:

- **\_\_\_off =** front passenger airbags are deactivated and will not inflate in the event of a collision. Control indicator \_\_\_off illuminates continuously. A child restraint system can be installed in accordance with the chart Child restraint installation locations \_\_\_ 52.

- **\_\_\_on =** front passenger airbags are active. No child restraint systems can be installed.
As long as the control indicator \( \text{off} \) is not illuminated, the airbag systems for the front passenger seat will inflate in the event of a collision.

Change status only when the vehicle is stopped with the ignition off.

Status remains until the next change.

Control indicator for airbag deactivation \( \text{deactivate} \) 77.

**Child restraints**

**Child restraint systems**

We recommend the GM child restraint system which is tailored specifically to the vehicle.

When a child restraint system is being used, pay attention to the following usage and installation instructions and also those supplied with the child restraint system.

Always comply with local or national regulations. In some countries, the use of child restraint systems is forbidden on certain seats.

**Warning**

When using a child restraint system on the front passenger seat, the airbag systems for the front passenger seat must be deactivated; if not, the triggering of the airbags poses a risk of fatal injury to the child.

This is especially the case if rear-facing child restraint systems are used on the front passenger seat.

Airbag deactivation 49.

**Selecting the right system**

The rear seats are the most convenient location to fasten a child restraint system.

Children should travel facing rearwards in the vehicle as long as possible. This makes sure that the child's backbone, which is still very weak, is under less strain in the event of an accident.

Suitable are restraint systems that comply with ECE 44-03 or ECE 44-04. Check local laws and regulations for mandatory use of child restraint systems.

Never carry a child whilst travelling in the vehicle. The child will become too heavy to hold in the event of a collision.

When transporting children, use the child restraint systems suitable for the child's weight.
Ensure that the child restraint system to be installed is compatible with the vehicle type.

Ensure that the mounting location of the child restraint system within the vehicle is correct.

Allow children to enter and exit the vehicle only on the side facing away from the traffic.

When the child restraint system is not in use, secure the seat with a seat belt or remove it from the vehicle.

**Note**

Do not stick anything on the child restraint systems and do not cover them with any other materials.

A child restraint system which has been subjected to stress in an accident must be replaced.

Please ensure that infants and children are seated in the rear seats using child restraints.

Until the children can use seat belts, please select a child restraint suitable for its age and make sure the child wears it. Please see the instructions on the relevant products for child restraints.
# Child restraint installation locations

## Permissible options for fitting a child restraint system

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Weight and age class</th>
<th>On front passenger seat</th>
<th>On rear outboard seats</th>
<th>On rear centre seat</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>activated airbag</td>
<td>deactivated airbag</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| **Group 0: up to 10 kg** or approx. 10 months | X | U
|                      |                         | U² | U |
| **Group 0+: up to 13 kg** or approx. 2 years | X | U
|                      |                         | U² | U |
| **Group I: 9 to 18 kg** or approx. 8 months to 4 years | X | U
|                      |                         | U² | U |
| **Group II: 15 to 25 kg** or approx. 3 to 7 years | X | X | U |
| **Group III: 22 to 36 kg** or approx. 6 to 12 years | X | X | U |

1 = Only if front passenger seat airbag systems are deactivated. If the child restraint system is being secured using a three-point seat belt, move seat height adjustment to uppermost position and ensure that vehicle safety belt runs forwards from the upper anchorage point.

2 = Seat available with ISOFIX and Top-Tether mounting brackets.

U = Universal suitability in conjunction with three-point seat belt.

X = No child restraint system permitted in this weight class.
### Permissible options for fitting an ISOFIX child restraint system

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Weight class</th>
<th>Size class</th>
<th>Fixture</th>
<th>On front passenger seat</th>
<th>On rear outboard seats</th>
<th>On rear centre seat</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Group 0: up to 10 kg</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>ISO/R1</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>IL&lt;sup&gt;1&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Group 0+: up to 13 kg</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>ISO/R1</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>IL&lt;sup&gt;1&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>D</td>
<td>ISO/R2</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>IL&lt;sup&gt;1&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>C</td>
<td>ISO/R3</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>IL&lt;sup&gt;1&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Group I: 9 to 18 kg</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>ISO/R2</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>IL&lt;sup&gt;1&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>C</td>
<td>ISO/R3</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>IL&lt;sup&gt;1&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>B</td>
<td>ISO/F2</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>IL, IUF</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>B1</td>
<td>ISO/F2X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>IL, IUF</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A</td>
<td>ISO/F3</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>IL, IUF</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

IL = Suitable for particular ISOFIX restraint systems of the 'specific-vehicle', 'restricted' or 'semi-universal' categories. The ISOFIX restraint system must be approved for the specific vehicle type.

IUF = Suitable for ISOFIX forward-facing child restraint systems of universal category approved for use in this mass group.

X = No ISOFIX child restraint system approved in this weight class.

<sup>1</sup> = Move front seat to most forward position or move forward until child restraint system does not have any interference with front seat backrest.
ISOFIX size class and seat device

A – ISO/F3 = Forward-facing child restraint system for children of maximum size in the weight class 9 to 18 kg.
B – ISO/F2 = Forward-facing child restraint system for smaller children in the weight class 9 to 18 kg.
B1 – ISO/F2X = Forward-facing child restraint system for smaller children in the weight class 9 to 18 kg.
C – ISO/R3 = Rear-facing child restraint system for children of maximum size in the weight class up to 18 kg.
D – ISO/R2 = Rear-facing child restraint system for smaller children in the weight class up to 18 kg.
E – ISO/R1 = Rear-facing child restraint system for young children in the weight class up to 13 kg.
Isofix child restraint systems

Fasten vehicle-approved ISOFIX child restraint systems to the ISOFIX mounting brackets. Specific vehicle ISOFIX child restraint system positions are marked in the table by IL.

ISOFIX mounting brackets are indicated by a label on the backrest.

Top-tether child restraint systems

Top-tether fastening eyes are marked with the symbol 🦄 on the load compartment cover.

Open the flap of the required fastening eye, marked by the child seat symbol.

In addition to the ISOFIX mounting fasten the Top-tether strap to the Top-tether fastening eyes. The strap must run between the two guide rods of the head restraint.

ISOFIX child restraint systems of universal category positions are marked in the table by IUF.
Storage compartments

⚠️ Warning

Do not store heavy or sharp objects in the storage compartments. Otherwise, the storage compartment lid could open and vehicle occupants could be injured by objects being thrown around in the event of sharp braking, a sudden change in direction or an accident.

Instrument panel storage

Storage on top of the instrument panel

Pull the handle to fold up the cover.
Storage below the light switch

Pull the handle to open the box.

Glovebox

To open pull the handle. The glovebox is lockable with the vehicle key.

⚠️ Warning

To reduce the risk of injury in an accident or a sudden stop, always keep the glovebox door closed while driving.

Cupholders

Cupholders are located in the centre console.
Additional cupholders are located in the rear armrest, when it is folded down.

**Sunglasses storage**

Fold down to open. Do not use for storing heavy objects.

**Armrest storage**

**Storage in the front armrest**

Push lever to slide and fold up the armrest.

**Load compartment**

**Folding down rear seat backrests**

The rear backrest is divided into two parts. Both parts can be folded down. Push head restraints down by pressing the catch. Fold up rear armrest.

Pull release lever on one or both sides and fold down the backrests on the seat cushion.
Before folding up the seat backrests, put the seat belts of the outboard seats into the belt guides.

Fold up the backrests to an upright position and take out the seat belts from the retaining guides.
Latch seat backrests into position by pushing at the upper part of the backrest until they engage audibly.
Pull seat backrests forwards again to make sure they are correctly engaged.
The backrests are only engaged when the red marks on both sides near the release lever are not visible.

Insert all safety belts into their slots, if seat belts are not retracted automatically.
The centre rear safety belt may lock when you raise the seatback. If this happens, let the belt go back all the way and start again.
Never fold the seat backrest when the rear centre seat belt is buckled or pulled out.

Bag Hook

Use the bag hook only for light items.

Rear storage
On Station wagon a tray is located behind the rear seats.

Removing tray
Push tray upwards at the front to disengage
Pull tray rearwards and remove.

Installing tray
Engage tray in rear side guides and fold downwards.
Load compartment cover
Do not place any objects on the cover.

5-door hatchback
Removing
Unhook retaining straps from tailgate.

Lift cover at the rear and push it upwards at the front.
Remove the cover.

Fitting
Engage cover in side guides and fold downwards. Attach retaining straps to tailgate.

Station wagon

Closing cover
Pull the cover towards the rear using the handle until it engages in the sideward retainers.

Opening cover
Pull the handle at the end of the cover to the rear and downwards. It rolls up automatically.
Cover in upper position

Push the handle at the end of the cover downwards. The rear of the cover is guided upwards automatically.

Removing cover

Open the load compartment cover. Push the catch inwards and lift the cover. Remove the cover.

Installing cover

Insert the cover in the side retainer. Push the catch on the other side of the cover inwards and hold. Lower the cover and let the catch engage.

Rear floor storage cover

Rear floor cover, Station wagon

Unlock the rear floor cover by pushing both catches inwards. Lift the cover by pulling the handle. Fold and place the cover behind the rear seats.
Lashing eyes

The lashing eyes are designed to secure items against slippage, e.g. using lashing straps or luggage net.

Safety net

The safety net is available on the Station wagon and can be installed behind the rear seats or, if the rear seat backrests are folded, behind the front seats.
Passengers must not be transported behind the safety net.

Installation

Behind the rear seats

Attach lower hook with opening facing backward to eye in the right and left sidewall. Adjust strap length on safety net by attaching the upper hook to the eyes of the strap. Keep strap under tension while proceeding with installation of rod.

Behind the front seats

Attach strap to eyes underneath the rear seat cushion.
Fold backrests forward.
Move front seats forward to ease tension if necessary.
Installation of the rod

There are two installation openings in the roof frame: suspend and engage rod of net at one side, compress rod and suspend and engage at other side.

Load compartment 58.

Removal
Unhook the safety net rods from the brackets in the roof frame. Detach straps from the eyes. Roll up the net and secure with a strap.

The removed safety net can be stored under the rear floor cover 61.

Warning triangle

4-doors
Secure the warning triangle with the Velcro strap.

5-doors hatchback
Stow the warning triangle in the stowage compartment under the rear floor cover.

Station wagon

Fold down straps. Stow the warning triangle in the space behind the straps on the inside of the tailgate.
First aid kit

4-doors
Stow the first aid kit in the mesh net on the right side of the load compartment.

5-doors hatchback
Stow the first aid kit in the stowage compartment under the rear floor cover.

Station wagon
Fold down strap. Stow the first aid kit in the space behind a strap on the inside of the tailgate.

Roof rack system

Roof rack
For safety reasons and to avoid damage to the roof, the vehicle approved roof rack system is recommended.
Follow the installation instructions and remove the roof rack when not in use.
Loading information

- Heavy objects in the load compartment should be placed against the seat backrests. Ensure the backrests are securely engaged. If objects can be stacked, the heavier objects should be placed at the bottom.
- Secure objects with lashing straps attached to lashing eyes 62.
- Secure objects in load compartment to prevent sliding.

- When transporting objects in the load compartment, the backrests of the rear seats must not be angled forward.
- Do not allow the load to protrude above the upper edge of the backrests.
- Do not place any objects on the load compartment cover or the instrument panel, do not cover the sensor on top of the instrument panel.
- The load must not obstruct the operation of the pedals, parking brake and gear selector, or hinder the freedom of movement of the driver. Do not place any unsecured objects in the interior.
- Do not drive with an open load compartment.
- The payload is the difference between the permitted gross vehicle weight (see identification plate 300) and the kerb weight.

To calculate the kerb weight, enter the data for your vehicle in the Weights table, on page 3.

The kerb weight includes weights for the driver (68 kg), luggage (7 kg) and all fluids (tank 90 % full). Optional equipment and accessories increase the kerb weight.

- Driving with a roof load increases the sensitivity of the vehicle to cross-winds and has a detrimental effect on vehicle handling due to the vehicle’s higher centre of gravity. Distribute the load evenly and secure it properly with retaining straps. Adjust the tyre pressure and vehicle speed according to the load conditions. Check and retighten the straps frequently.

Do not drive faster than 120 km/h.
Instruments and controls

Controls ....................................... 66
Warning lights, gauges and indicators ........................................... 71
Information displays ..................... 81
Vehicle messages ........................ 87
Trip computer ............................... 89
Vehicle personalisation .......... 90

Controls

Steering wheel adjustment

Unlock lever, adjust steering wheel, then engage lever and ensure it is fully locked.
Do not adjust steering wheel unless vehicle is stationary.

Steering wheel controls

The infotainment system and the cruise control can be operated by the controls on the steering wheel. See Infotainment manual or Infotainment system section for further information.
Cruise control 230.
Horn

Press 📦.

Windscreen wiper/washer

Windscreen wiper

2 = fast
1 = slow
_TIMER = timed interval wiping
☐ = off

For a single wipe when the windscreen wipers are off, press the lever down.
Do not use if the windscreen is frozen.
Switch off in car washes.

Adjustable wiper interval

Wiper lever in position TIMER.
Turn the adjuster wheel to adjust the desired wipe interval:
short interval = turn adjuster wheel upwards
long interval = turn adjuster wheel downwards
Automatic wiping with rain sensor

= automatic wiping with rain sensor

The rain sensor detects the amount of water on the windscreen and automatically regulates the frequency of the windscreen wiper. After activation of the rain sensor mode or adjusting the sensitivity of the rain sensor the new setting is confirmed by a single wipe.

Adjustable sensitivity of the rain sensor

Turn the adjuster wheel to adjust the sensitivity:

- low sensitivity = turn adjuster wheel downwards
- high sensitivity = turn adjuster wheel upwards

Keep the sensor free from dust, dirt and ice.

Windscreen washer
Push lever. Washer fluid is sprayed onto the windscreen and the wiper wipes a few times.

Rear window wiper/washer

Press the rocker switch to activate the rear window wiper:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Position</th>
<th>Operation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>upper</td>
<td>continuous operation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lower</td>
<td>intermittent operation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>middle</td>
<td>off</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Push lever. Washer fluid is sprayed onto the rear window and the wiper wipes a few times.

Do not use if the rear window is frozen.

Switch off in car washes.

The rear window wiper comes on automatically when the windscreen wiper is switched on and reverse gear is engaged.

Activation or deactivation of this function can be changed in the menu Settings in the Info-Display.

Vehicle personalisation 90.

The rear window washer system is deactivated when the fluid level is low.

Outside temperature

A drop in temperature is indicated immediately and a rise in temperature after a time delay.

⚠️ Warning

The road surface may already be icy even though the display indicates a few degrees above 0 °C.
Clock
Date and time are shown in the Info-Display.

Set date and time
CD 300, CD 400, Navi 600
Press the CONFIG button. The menu Settings is displayed.
Select Time Date.
Vehicle personalisation § 90.

Audio system, MyLink Text Based system, MyLink Icon Based system with NAVI
See Infotainment manual for further information.

Power outlets
12V power outlets are located in the front and rear floor console.
Station wagon: A 12 Volt power outlet is located at the left sidewall in the load compartment.
Do not exceed the maximum power consumption of 120 Watts.

With ignition off the power outlet is deactivated. Additionally the power outlet is deactivated in case of low battery voltage.
Do not connect any current-delivering accessories, e.g. electrical charging devices or batteries.
Do not damage the sockets by using unsuitable plugs.
Stop-start system § 219.
Warning lights, gauges and indicators

**Speedometer**
Indicates vehicle speed.

**Odometer**
The bottom line displays the recorded distance.

**Trip odometer**
The top line displays the recorded distance since the last reset (max. value 1999.9). When the recorded distance reaches 1999.9, trip odometer automatically shows 0 without resetting.
To reset, push and hold the reset button for a few seconds with the ignition on.

**Tachometer**
Displays the engine revolutions per minute.
Drive at a low engine speed in each gear as much as possible.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Caution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>If the needle is in the warning zone, the maximum permitted engine speed is exceeded. Engine at risk.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Fuel gauge
Displays the fuel level in the tank.
Control indicator 
illuminates if the level in the tank is low. Refuel immediately.
Never run the tank dry.
Because of the fuel remaining in the tank, the top-up quantity may be less than the specified tank capacity.

Engine coolant temperature gauge
Displays the coolant temperature.
left area = engine operating temperature not yet reached
central area = normal operating temperature
right area = temperature too high

Caution
If engine coolant temperature is too high, stop vehicle, switch off engine. Danger to engine. Check coolant level.

Service display
Engine oil life system for diesel engines
When to change engine oil
This vehicle has a computer system that indicates when to change the engine oil and filter. This is based on engine revolutions and engine temperature, and not on mileage. Based on driving conditions, the mileage at which an oil change is indicated can vary considerably.
For the oil life system to work properly, the system must be reset every time the oil is changed. When the system has calculated that oil life has been diminished, it indicates that an oil change is necessary. CodE 82
appears in the Driver Information Centre. Change the oil as soon as possible within the next 1000 km.

It is possible that, if driving under the best conditions, the oil life system might indicate that an oil change is not necessary for over a year. The engine oil and filter must be changed at least once a year and, at this time, the system must be reset. Your dealer has trained service people who can perform this work and reset the system.

It is also important to check the oil level on a regular basis and top up if necessary. If the system is ever reset accidentally, the oil must be changed at 5000 km since the last oil change. Remember to reset the oil life system whenever the oil is changed.

The remaining engine oil life duration is displayed in the Driver Information Centre by the control indicator ˌ, followed by a percent value which shows the remaining engine oil life. For this purpose the ignition has to be switched on without engine running.

Driver Information Centre ◇ 81.
Service Information ◇ 290.

Display of remaining engine oil life

How to reset the engine oil life system
Reset the system whenever the engine oil is changed so that the system can calculate the next engine oil change. To reset the engine oil life system, do one of the following:

- Using a diagnostic tool:
  Your workshop will reset the system using this tool after changing the engine oil.

- Using the SET/CLR button on vehicles with Midlevel-Display:
  Press the MENU button on the turn signal lever to select the Vehicle Information Menu. Turn the adjuster wheel until the menu with the remaining engine oil life duration is displayed. Press SET/CLR button for a few seconds with ignition on. If CodE 82 still appears in the Driver Information Centre after the vehicle has been started, the engine oil life system has not been reset. Repeat the procedure.
Control indicators

The control indicators described are not present in all vehicles. The description applies to all instrument versions. When the ignition is switched on, most control indicators will illuminate briefly as a functionality test.

The control indicator colours mean:

- red  = danger, important reminder
- yellow = warning, information, fault
- green  = confirmation of activation
- blue   = confirmation of activation
- white  = confirmation of activation
Control indicators in the instrument
Control indicators in the centre console

Turn signal
illos illuminates or flashes green.

Illuminated
The control indicator illuminates briefly when the parking lights are switched on.

Flashes
The control indicator flashes if a turn signal or the hazard warning flashers are activated.

Fast flashing: failure of a turn signal light or associated fuse.
Bulb replacement 255. Fuses 264.
Turn signals 102.

Seat belt reminder

Seat belt reminder on front seats
 for driver's seat illuminates or flashes red.
 for front passenger seat illuminates or flashes red, when seat is occupied.

Illuminates
4 seconds after the ignition is switched on, 100 seconds after starting the engine or after reaching a specific distance respectively speed until the seat belt is fastened.

Flashes
For 100 seconds after starting the engine or reaching a specific distance respectively speed until the seat belt is fastened.

Fastening the seat belt 42.

Airbag and belt tensioners
illuminates red.

When the ignition is switched on, the control indicator illuminates for about 4 seconds. If it does not illuminate, does not go out after 4 seconds or illuminates whilst driving, there is a fault in the belt tensioner or in the airbag system. The systems may fail to trigger in the event of an accident. Deployment of the belt tensioners or airbags is indicated by continuous illumination of .

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Warning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Have the cause of the fault eliminated immediately by a workshop.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Airbag system, belt tensioners 44, 41.
Airbag deactivation

Airbag deactivation

1 for front passenger airbag illuminates yellow.

When the control indicator illuminates the front passenger airbag is activated.

2 for front passenger airbag illuminates yellow.

When the control indicator illuminates the front passenger airbag is deactivated.

Charging system

Charging system

illuminates or flashes red.

It illuminates when the ignition is switched on and goes out shortly after the engine starts.

Illuminates when the engine is running

Stop, switch off engine. Battery is not charging. Engine cooling may be interrupted. In diesel engines, power to the brake servo unit may be cut. Seek the assistance of a workshop.

Malfunction indicator light

Malfunction indicator light

illuminates or flashes yellow.

It illuminates when the ignition is switched on and goes out shortly after the engine starts.

Caution

The indicator light signals that your vehicle has a problem that requires attention. Driving with the malfunction indicator light illuminating or flashing can damage the emissions control system and can affect the fuel economy and drive ability of your vehicle. Seek the assistance of a workshop. We recommend that you consult your authorised repairer.

Service vehicle soon

Service vehicle soon

illuminates yellow when the vehicle needs a service.

It illuminates in combination with a warning code.

Vehicle messages 87.

Brake and clutch system

Brake and clutch system

Brake and clutch fluid level

Brake and clutch fluid level

illuminates red.

Illuminates when the parking brake is released if the brake/clutch fluid level is too low or if there is a brake system fault 252.

Warning

Stop. Do not continue your journey. Consult a workshop.

Illuminates after the ignition is switched on if the manual parking brake is applied 228.

Operate pedal

Operate pedal

flashes yellow.

Clutch pedal needs to be operated to start the engine. Stop-start system 219.

Antilock brake system (ABS)

Antilock brake system (ABS)

illuminates yellow.
Illuminates for a few seconds after the ignition is switched on. The system is ready for operation when the control indicator goes out.

If the control indicator does not go out after a few seconds, or if it illuminates while driving, there is a fault in the ABS. The brake system remains operational but without ABS regulation.

Antilock brake system  227.

**Upshift**

▲ illuminates green as control indicator, or is shown as a symbol in the Driver Information Centre with Uplevel-Display when upshifting is recommended for fuel saving reasons.

**Power steering**

aurantius illuminates yellow.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Illuminates with power steering reduced</strong></th>
<th><strong>Ultrasonic parking assist</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Power steering is reduced due to overheating of the system. Control indicator goes out when the system has cooled down.</td>
<td>P▲ illuminates yellow.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stop-start system  219.</td>
<td>Fault in system or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Fault due to sensors that are dirty or covered by ice or snow or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Interference due to external sources of ultra sound. Once the source of interference is removed, the system will operate normally.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Have the cause of the fault in the system remedied by a workshop.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Illuminates after interruption of power supply</strong></td>
<td>Ultrasonic parking sensors  231.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The steering angle sensor must be calibrated to make the power steering system operational.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>▪ For automatic calibration drive in straight line at constant slow speed.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>▪ If the control indicator remains illuminated, turn the steering wheel from limit position to limit position for manual calibration.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The control indicator goes out when the system is operational again.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Electronic Stability Control off**

aurantius illuminates. |

Illuminates when the system is deactivated.
Electronic Stability Control and Traction Control system

- Illuminates or flashes yellow.

**Illuminates**
A fault in the system is present. Continued driving is possible. Driving stability, however, may deteriorate depending on road surface conditions.

Have the cause of the fault remedied by a workshop.

**Flashes**
The system is actively engaged. Engine output may be reduced and the vehicle may be braked automatically to a small degree.

Electronic stability control 229, Traction control system 228.

**Traction Control system off**

- Illuminates.

Illuminates when the system is deactivated.

---

**Preheating**

- Illuminates yellow.

Illuminates when preheating is activated. Only activates when outside temperature is low.

---

**Diesel particle filter**

- Illuminates or flashes yellow.

Illuminates or flashes if the diesel particle filter requires cleaning and previous driving conditions did not permit automatic cleaning. Continue driving and if possible do not allow engine speed to drop below 2000 rpm.

- Goes off as soon as the self-cleaning operation is complete.

Diesel particle filter 222, Stop-start system 219.

---

**Tyre pressure monitoring system**

- Illuminates or flashes yellow.

Tyre pressure loss. Stop immediately and check tyre pressure.

**Flashes**
Fault in system or tyre without pressure sensor mounted (e.g. spare wheel). After 60-90 seconds the control indicator illuminates continuously. Consult a workshop.

**Engine oil pressure**

- Illuminates red.

It illuminates when the ignition is switched on and goes out shortly after the engine starts.

**Illuminates when the engine is running**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Caution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Engine lubrication may be interrupted. This may result in damage to the engine and/or locking of the drive wheels.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1. Depress clutch.
2. Select neutral gear, set selector lever to N.
3. Move out of the flow of traffic as quickly as possible without impeding other vehicles.
4. Switch off ignition.

### Warning

When the engine is off, considerably more force is needed to brake and steer. During an Autostop the brake servo unit will still be operational.

Do not remove key until vehicle is stationary, otherwise the steering wheel lock could engage unexpectedly.

Check oil level before seeking assistance of a workshop.

---

**Low fuel**

-illuminates yellow.

Illuminates when level in fuel tank is too low.

---

**Catalytic converter**

223.

Bleeding the diesel fuel system

254.

---

**Immobiliser**

-illuminates or flashes yellow.

Fault in the electronic immobiliser system. The engine cannot be started.

---

**Apply footbrake**

- flashes yellow.

Flashes when brake or clutch pedal needs to be depressed to start vehicles with electronic key system

22.

---

**Exterior light**

-illuminates green.

Illuminated when the exterior lights are on

100.

---

**High beam**

-illuminates blue.

Illuminated when high beam is on and during headlight flash

101.

---

**Fog light**

-illuminates green.

Illuminated when the front fog lights are on

103.

---

**Rear fog light**

-illuminates yellow.

Illuminated when the rear fog light is on

103.

---

**Rain sensor**

-illuminates green.

Illuminated when automatic rain sensor is activated

67.

---

**Cruise control**

-illuminates white or green.

Illuminates white

The system is on.
Illuminates green
A certain speed is stored.
Cruise control 230.

Bonnet open
زيارة illuminates yellow.
It illuminates when the bonnet is open.
Stop-start system 219.

Door open
eliminar illuminates red.
It illuminates when a door or the tailgate is open.

### Information displays

#### Driver Information Centre

The Driver Information Center (DIC) is located in the instrument cluster and available as Midlevel-Display or Uplevel-Display.

In the Midlevel-Display the following main menus can be selected by pushing the MENU button:
- Vehicle Information Menu
- Trip/Fuel Information Menu

In the Uplevel-Display the menus can be selected by pushing the MENU button. Menu symbols are indicated in the top line of the display:
- 🚗 Vehicle Information Menu
- 🗼 Trip/Fuel Information Menu
- 🕒 ECO ECO Information Menu

Some of the displayed functions differ between vehicle driving and standstill and some functions are only active when the vehicle is driving.
Vehicle personalisation 90.
Selecting menus and functions
The menus and functions can be selected via the buttons on the turn signal lever.

Press the MENU button to switch between the menus or to return from a submenu to the next higher menu level.

Press the SET/CLR button to select a function or to confirm a message.

Vehicle Information Menu
On Midlevel-Display, press the MENU button to select the Vehicle Information Menu, or on Uplevel-Display select ⚙. Turn the adjuster wheel to select a submenu. Press the SET/CLR button to confirm.

Follow the instructions given in the submenu.
- **Unit**: displayed units can be changed
- **Tire Pressure**: checks tyre pressure of all wheels during driving ⚔ 271

Trip/Fuel Information Menu
On Midlevel-Display, press the MENU button to select the Trip/Fuel Information Menu, or select ⬆️ on Uplevel-Display.

Turn the adjuster wheel to select a submenu. Press the SET/CLR button to confirm.
Trip odometer 1
Trip odometer 2
Trip odometer 2 is only available on vehicles with Uplevel-Display. On vehicles with trip computer more submenus are available.
Trip/Fuel Information Menu, Trip Computer 89.

ECO Information Menu
Press the MENU button to select ECO in the top line of the Uplevel-Display.

Turn the adjuster wheel to select a submenu. Press the SET/CLR button to confirm.
Submenus are:

- Shift indication: Current gear is indicated inside an arrow. The cypher above recommends upshifting for fuel saving reasons.
- Eco index display: The current fuel consumption is indicated on a segment display. For economical driving adapt your driving characteristic to keep the filled segments within the Eco area. The more segments are filled, the higher is the fuel consumption.
- Top Consumers: List of top comfort consumers currently switched on is displayed in descending order. Fuel saving potential is indicated. A switched-off consumer disappears from the list and the consumption value will be updated.

Simultaneously the current consumption value is indicated.
■ Economy Trend: Displays the average consumption development over a distance of 50 km. Filled segments display the consumption in 5 km steps and shows the effect of topography or driving behaviour on fuel consumption.

**Graphic-Info-Display, Colour-Info-Display**
Depending on the vehicle configuration the vehicle has a
- Graphic-Info-Display
  or
- Colour-Info-Display with Touch-Screen functionality.

**Graphic-Info-Display**
Depending on the Infotainment system, the Graphic-Info-Display is available in three versions.

**CD 300:**

**Audio system:**
Menus and settings are accessed via the display.
The Graphic-Info-Display indicates:
- time ➔ 70
- outside temperature ➔ 69
- date ➔ 70
- electronic climate control settings ➔ 209
- Infotainment system, see description for Infotainment system
- settings for vehicle personalisation ➔ 90

Selecting with the infotainment systems CD 400, CD 300

Push button CONFIG: Menu page Settings is displayed.
Turn knob MENU to select a setting or value.
Push knob MENU to confirm a setting or value.
Push button BACK to exit a menu.

Selecting with the infotainment system Audio system
Press the CONFIG button for the System Configuration menu.
Turn knob MENU-TUNE to select a setting or value.
Push knob MENU-TUNE to confirm a setting or value.
Push button BACK to exit a menu.

Colour-Info-Display
Depending on the Infotainment system, the Colour-Info-Display is available in three versions.
Navi 600:

MyLink Text Based system:

MyLink Icon Based system with NAVI:
Menus and settings are accessed via the display.
The Colour-Info-Display indicates in colour:
- time ø 70
- outside temperature ø 69
- date ø 70
- electronic climate control settings ø 209
- Infotainment system, see description in the Infotainment system manual
- settings for vehicle personalisation ø 90

The type of information and how it is displayed depends on the equipment of the vehicle and the settings made.

Selecting with the infotainment system Navi 600
Turn Menu knob to mark a menu option or to set a numeric value.
Press Menu knob to select or activate the marked option, to confirm a set value or to switch a system function on/off.
Press BACK to exit a menu.

Selecting with the infotainment system MyLink Text Based system
Press : Menu page settings is displayed.
Press the desired menu item on the screen to select and confirm.
Press ö to exit a menu.

Selecting with the infotainment system MyLink Icon Based system with NAVI
Press CONFIG button for the System Configuration menu.

Turn Menu/SEL knob to select a setting or value.
Press Menu/SEL knob to confirm a setting or value.
Press button BACK to exit a menu.
The infotainment system can also be controlled by using the touch screen buttons.
Vehicle messages

Messages are given via the Driver Information Centre (DIC), the Info-Display or as warning and signal buzzers. Confirm warning messages with the multifunction knob. If necessary seek the assistance of a workshop.

Vehicle messages on the Midlevel-Display

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Vehicle message</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>No radio remote control detected, depress clutch pedal for a restart</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Steering column is locked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>Left front turn indicator failure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>Left rear turn indicator failure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>Right front turn indicator failure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td>Right rear turn indicator failure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35</td>
<td>Replace battery in radio remote control</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48</td>
<td>Clean side blind spot alert system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54</td>
<td>Water in diesel fuel filter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65</td>
<td>Theft attempt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>67</td>
<td>Service steering column lock</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>75</td>
<td>Service air conditioner</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>76</td>
<td>Service side blind spot alert system</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The vehicle messages are displayed as code numbers.
Instruments and controls

Vehicle messages on the Uplevel-Display

The vehicle messages are displayed as text. Follow the instructions given in the messages.

The system displays messages regarding the following topics:

- Fluid levels
- Anti-theft alarm system
- Brakes
- Drive systems
- Ride control systems
- Cruise control
- Object detection systems
- Lighting, bulb replacement
- Wiper/washer system
- Doors, windows
- Radio remote control
- Seat belts
- Airbag systems
- Engine and transmission
- Tyre pressure
- Diesel particle filter
- Battery

Warning chimes

When starting the engine or whilst driving

- If seat belt is not fastened.
- If a certain speed is exceeded with parking brake applied.
- If a warning code appears in the Driver Information Centre.
- If the parking assist detects an object.

When the vehicle is parked and/or a door is opened

- When the key is in the ignition switch.
- With exterior lights on.

During an Autostop

- If the driver's door is opened.
Trip computer

The menus and functions can be selected by the buttons on the turn signal lever \(\text{81}\).

On Midlevel-Display, press the MENU button to select the Trip/Fuel Information Menu, or select \(\backslash /\) on the Uplevel-Display.

Turn the adjuster wheel to select one of the submenus:
- Trip odometer 1
- Trip odometer 2
  (only Uplevel-Display)
- Range
- Average consumption
- Instantaneous consumption
- Average speed

Trip computer 1 and 2
The information of two trip computers can be reset separately for odometer, average consumption and average speed, making it possible to display different trip information for different drivers.
To reset, press the SET/CLR button in each mode for a few seconds.

Trip odometer
Trip odometer displays the recorded distance since a certain reset.
Trip odometer counts up to a distance of 2000 kilometres and restarts then with 0.
**Instruments and controls**

To reset, press the reset knob or press the SET/CLR button for a few seconds.

**Range**
Range is calculated from current fuel tank content and current consumption. The display shows average values.

After refuelling, the range is updated automatically after a brief delay.

When the fuel level in the tank is low, a message appears in the Driver Information Center. Additionally the control indicator in the fuel gauge illuminates.

**Average consumption**
Display of average consumption. The measurement can be reset at any time.
To reset, press the SET/CLR button for a few seconds.

**Instantaneous consumption**
Display of the instantaneous consumption. At low speeds, consumption per hour is displayed.

---

### Caution

The instantaneous and average consumption can vary according to the driving conditions, driving pattern or vehicle speed.

**Average speed**
Display of average speed. The measurement can be reset at any time.
To reset, press the SET/CLR button for a few seconds.

---

**Vehicle personalisation**
The vehicle's parameters can be personalised by changing the settings in the Driver Information Centre and in the Info-Display.

Depending on vehicle equipment some of the functions described below might not be available.

**Settings in the Driver Information Centre**
The Unit settings can be selected by the buttons on the turn signal lever.
Press the **MENU** button to select the **Vehicle Information Menu**, or on **Uplevel-Display** select 📈.

The **Unit** settings menu is displayed. Displayed units can be changed. Press the **SET/CLR** button and turn the adjuster wheel to select one of the units.

- **Unit1**: Great Britain
- **Unit2**: United States
- **Unit3**: Europe

Press the **SET/CLR** button to confirm.

**Settings in the Graphic-Info-Display**

**CD 300/CD 400**

Switch the Infotainment system on and press the **CONFIG** button. The menu **Settings** is displayed.

The following settings can be selected by the **MENU** button:

- **Languages**
- **Time Date**
- **Radio settings**
- **Vehicle settings**

In the corresponding submenus the following settings can be changed:

- **Climate and air quality**
  - **Auto fan speed**: Modifies the fan speed high / medium / low.
Automatic air recirculation:
Modifies AQS (Air Quality Sensor) sensitivity low / high.

Auto demist: on / off (activate or deactivate auto demist).

Auto rear demist: on / off (activate or deactivate auto rear demist).

- Comfort settings
Chime volume: Change the volume of warning chimes.

Rear auto wipe in reverse: Activate or deactivate automatically switching on of the rear window wiper when reverse gear is engaged.

- Park assist / Collision detection
Park assist: Activate or deactivate the ultrasonic sensors.

Side blind zone alert: Activates or deactivates the side blind spot alert system.

- Exterior ambient lighting
Exterior lighting by unlocking: Activate or deactivate the entry lighting.

Duration upon exit of vehicle:
Activate or deactivate and change the duration of exit lighting.

- Power door locks
Stop door lock if door open: Activate or deactivate the automatic door locking function while a door is open.

- Remote locking, unlocking, starting
Remote unlock feedback: Activate or deactivate the hazard warning flasher feedback whilst unlocking.

Remote lock feedback: Activate or deactivate the hazard warning light feedback whilst unlocking.

Remote door unlock: Change the configuration to unlock only the driver's door or the whole vehicle whilst unlocking.

- Restore factory settings
Restore factory settings: Reset all settings to the default settings.

Press the CONFIG button for the Settings menu.

Turn the MENU-TUNE control to move to the desired setup menu, and then press MENU-TUNE button.

The following settings can be selected:
- Languages
- Time Date
- Radio settings
- Bluetooth Settings
- Vehicle settings

In the corresponding submenus the following settings can be changed:
Languages
Selection of the desired language.

Time Date
See Infotainment manual for further information.

Radio settings
See Infotainment manual for further information.

Bluetooth Settings
See Infotainment manual for further information.

Vehicle settings
■ Climate and air quality
  Auto fan speed: Modifies the fan speed high / medium / low.
  Automatic air recirculation: Modifies AQS (Air Quality Sensor) sensitivity low / high.
  Auto demist: on / off (activate or deactivate auto demist).
  Auto rear demist: on / off (activate or deactivate auto rear demist).

■ Comfort settings
  Chime volume: Change the volume of warning chimes.
  Rear auto wipe in reverse: Activate or deactivate automatically switching on of the rear window wiper when reverse gear is engaged.

■ Park assist/Collision detection
  Park assist: Activate or deactivate the ultrasonic sensors.

■ Exterior ambient lighting
  Exterior lighting by unlocking: Activate or deactivate the entry lighting.
  Duration upon exit of vehicle: Activate or deactivate and change the duration of exit lighting.

■ Power door locks
  Stop door lock if door open: Activate or deactivate the automatic door locking function while a door is open.

■ Remote locking, unlocking, starting
  Remote unlock feedback: Activate or deactivate the hazard warning flasher feedback whilst unlocking.

Remote lock feedback: Activate or deactivate the hazard warning light feedback whilst locking.

Passive door unlock: Change the configuration to unlock only the driver's door or the whole vehicle whilst unlocking.

Remote left in vehicle alarm: Select On or Off.

■ Restore factory settings:
  Restore all settings to the default settings.

Settings in the Colour-Info-Display
Navi 600
Press the CONFIG button. The menu Settings is displayed.
Instruments and controls

The following settings can be selected by turning and pressing the multifunction knob:

- Languages
- Time & Date
- Radio settings
- Phone settings
- Navigation settings
- Vehicle settings
- Display settings

In the corresponding submenus the following settings can be changed:

Languages
Selection of the desired language.

Time & Date
See Clock 70.

Radio settings
See description for Infotainment system in the infotainment section.

Phone settings
See description for Infotainment system in the infotainment section.

Navigation settings
See description for Infotainment system in the infotainment section.

Vehicle settings

- Climate and air quality
  Auto fan speed: Modifies the fan regulation. Changed setting will be active after switching the ignition off and on again.
  Climate control mode: Activate or deactivate cooling.
  Auto demist: Supports windscreen dehumidification by automatically selecting the necessary settings and auto air conditioning mode.
  Auto rear demist: Automatic activation of rear heated window.
Comfort settings
Chime volume: Change the volume of warning chimes.
Rear auto wipe in reverse: Activate or deactivate automatically switching on of the rear window wiper when reverse gear is engaged.

Park assist / Collision detection
Park assist: Activate or deactivate the ultrasonic parking assist.
Side blind zone alert: Activates or deactivates the side blind spot alert system.

Exterior ambient lighting
Duration upon exit of vehicle: Activate or deactivate and change the duration of exit lighting.
Exterior lighting by unlocking: Activate or deactivate the welcome lighting.

Power door locks
Prevent doorlock while door open: Activate or deactivate the automatic door locking function while a door is open.

Lock / Unlock / Start by remote
Remote unlock feedback: Activate or deactivate the hazard warning flasher feedback whilst unlocking.
Remote door unlock: Change the configuration to unlock only the driver’s door or the whole vehicle whilst unlocking.
Auto relock doors: Activate or deactivate the automatic relock function after unlocking without opening the vehicle.

Restore factory settings
Restore factory settings: Reset all settings to the default settings.

Display settings
Selectable display settings:
Day mode: Optimisation for daylight conditions.
Night mode: Optimisation for darkness.
Automatic mode: The display changes mode when the vehicle lights are switched on/off.

Settings in the Colour-Info-Display
MyLink Text Based system
When audio is switched on, press \ on the control panel.
Press settings.
The following settings can be selected:
- time & date settings
- radio settings
- connection settings
- vehicle settings
- language
- text scroll
- touch beep volume
- max startup volume
- system version
- DivX(R) VOD

In the corresponding submenus the following settings can be changed:

- **time & date settings**
  See Infotainment manual for further information.

- **radio settings**
  See Infotainment manual for further information.

- **connection settings**
  See Infotainment manual for further information.

- **vehicle settings**
  - **climate & air quality**
    - **auto fan speed**: Modifies the fan speed high / medium / low.
    - **air quality sensor**: Modifies AQS (Air Quality Sensor) sensitivity low / high.
    - **air conditioning mode**: off / on / last setting
    - **auto defog**: on / off
    - **auto rear defog**: on / off

- **comfort & convenience**
  - **chime volume**: Change the volume of warning chimes.
  - **auto wipe in reverse gear**: Activate or deactivate automatically switching on of the rear window wiper when reverse gear is engaged.

- **collision / detection**
  - **park assist**: Activate or deactivate the ultrasonic sensors.

- **lighting**
  - **exit lighting**: Off / 30 Sec / 60 Sec / 120 Sec.
  - **vehicle locator lights**: Select On or Off.

- **power door locks**
  - **unlocked door anti lock out**: Select On or Off.
  - **delayed door lock**: Select On or Off.

- **lock, unlock settings**
  - **passive entry unlock**: Select All Doors/ Driver Door.
  - **remote unlock light feedback**: Select Flash Lights/ Lights off.
remote lock light & horn feedback: Select Lights Only/ Lights & Horn/ Horn Only/ Off.

remote door unlock: Select All Doors/ Driver Door.

remote left in vehicle reminder: Select On or Off.

■ rear camera option: This menu is displayed only when the RVC (Rear View Camera) is installed on your vehicle.

symbols: Select On or Off.
guidelines: Select On or Off.

■ vehicle factory settings: Restore the setting values back to the factory default settings.

language
Selection of the desired language.

text scroll
See Infotainment manual for further information.

touch beep volume
See Infotainment manual for further information.

max startup volume
See Infotainment manual for further information.

system version
See Infotainment manual for further information.

DivX(R) VOD
See Infotainment manual for further information.

Settings in the Colour-Info-Display
MyLink Icon Based system with NAVI

Press the Config screen button on the Home Page or the CONFIG button on the faceplate to enter the Configuration menu.

Press the scroll bar until the desired option displays. Select the desired settings to change.

■ Languages
■ Time and Date
■ Radio Settings
■ Phone Settings
■ Navigation Settings
■ Vehicle Settings
■ Display Settings

In the corresponding submenus the following settings can be changed:

Languages
Selection of the desired language.

Time and Date
See Infotainment manual for further information.

Radio settings
See Infotainment manual for further information.
Phone Settings
See Infotainment manual for further information.

Navigation Settings
See Infotainment manual for further information.

Vehicle settings
- **Climate and Air Quality**
  - **Auto Fan Speed:** Modifies the fan speed high / medium / low.
  - **Air Quality Sensor:** Modifies AQS (Air Quality Sensor) sensitivity low / high.
  - **Air Conditioning Mode:** off / on / last setting
  - **Auto Defog:** on / off (activate or deactivate auto demist)
  - **Auto Rear Defog:** on / off (activate or deactivate auto rear demist)

- **Comfort and Convenience**
  - **Chime Volume:** Change the volume of warning chimes.
  - **Auto Reverse Gear Wiper:** Activate or deactivate automatically switching on of the rear window wiper when reverse gear is engaged.

- **Collision Detection Systems**
  - **Park Assist:** Activate or deactivate the ultrasonic sensors.
  - **Side Blind Zone Alert:** Activates or deactivates the side blind spot alert system.

- **Lighting**
  - **Vehicle Locator Lights:** Activate or deactivate the entry lighting.
  - **Exit Lighting:** Activate or deactivate and change the duration of exit lighting.

- **Power Door Locks**
  - **Auto Door Lock:** Activate or deactivate the automatic door locking function.
  - **Delay Door Lock:** Activate or deactivate the delayed door locking function.
  - **Open Door Anti Lock Out:** Activate or deactivate the automatic door locking function while a door is open.

- **Remote Lock/Unlock/Start**
  - **Remote Lock Feedback:** Activate or deactivate the hazard warning light feedback whilst locking.
  - **Remote Unlock Feedback:** Activate or deactivate the hazard warning flasher feedback whilst unlocking.
  - **Remote Door Unlock:** Change the configuration to unlock only the driver's door or the whole vehicle whilst unlocking.
  - **Remote Left in Veh. Reminder:** Activate or deactivate a reminder if the electronic key is left in the vehicle.

- **Return to Factory Settings?:** Reset all settings to the default settings.

Display Settings
- **Home Page Menu:**
  See Infotainment manual for further information.

- **Rear Camera Options:**
  Press to adjust the rear camera options 

234.
- **Display Off:**
  See Infotainment manual for further information.

- **Map Settings:**
  See Infotainment manual for further information.

- **Map Display:**
  See Infotainment manual for further information.
Lighting

Exterior lighting ................................ 100
Interior lighting .............................. 104
Lighting features ............................ 105

Exterior lighting

Light switch

- AUTO = automatic light control depending on external lighting conditions.
-  = activation or deactivation of the automatic light control. Switch turns back to AUTO.
-  = Sidelights
-  = Headlights

On vehicles without automatic light control:
0 = off

When switching on ignition, automatic light control is always active.
When lights are on,  lights up. Control indicator  80.

Automatic light control

Automatic light control function
When the automatic light control function is switched on and the engine is running, the system switches between daytime running
Light and headlights automatically depending on the lighting conditions and information given by the rain sensor system.

Daytime running light  102.

**Automatic headlight activation**
During poor lighting conditions the headlights and tail lights are switched on.
Furthermore the headlights are switched on if the windscreen wipers have been activated for several wipes.

---

### High beam

To switch from low to high beam, push lever.
To switch to low beam, push lever again or pull.

### Headlight flash

To activate the headlight flash, pull lever.

### Headlight range adjustment

**Manual headlight range adjustment**

To adapt headlight range to the vehicle load to prevent dazzling: turn thumb wheel  to required position.

---

**Warning**

Always switch the high beam headlights to low beam when you approach oncoming vehicles or other vehicles are ahead. High beam headlights can temporarily dazzle other drivers, which could result in a collision.
0 = front seats occupied
1 = all seats occupied
2 = all seats occupied and load compartment laden
3 = driver's seat occupied and load compartment laden.

Headlights when driving abroad
The asymmetrical headlight beam extends visibility at the edge of the road at the passenger side.
However, when driving in countries where traffic drives on the opposite side of the road, adjust the headlights to prevent dazzling of oncoming traffic.
Have the headlights adjusted by a workshop.

Daytime running lights
Daytime running light increases visibility of the vehicle during daylight.

Hazard warning flashers
Operated with the △ button.
The hazard warning flashers activate automatically if the airbags deploy.

Turn and lane-change signals
lever up = right indicator
lever down = left indicator
If the lever is moved past the resistance point, the indicator is switched on constantly. When the steering wheel moves back, the indicator is automatically deactivated.
For three flashes, e.g. when changing lanes, press the lever until resistance is felt and then release.
Move the lever to the resistance point and hold for longer indication.
Switch the indicator off manually by moving the lever to its original position.

**Front fog lights**

Operated with the $D$ button.

**Rear fog lights**

Operated with the $D$ button.

Light switch in position **Auto**: switching on rear fog light will switch headlights on automatically.

Light switch in position $\Rightarrow \Leftarrow$: rear fog light can only be switched on with front fog lights.

**Parking lights**

When the vehicle is parked, the position lights front and rear on one side can be activated:

1. Switch off ignition.

2. Move turn signal lever all the way up (right parking lights) or down (left parking lights).

Confirmed by a signal and the corresponding turn signal control indicator.
Reversing lights
The reversing light illuminates when the ignition is on and reverse gear is selected.

Misted light covers
The inside of the light housing may mist up briefly in poor, wet and cold weather conditions, in heavy rain or after washing. The mist disappears quickly by itself; to help switch on the headlights.

Interior lighting
Instrument panel illumination control

Brightness of the following lights can be adjusted when the exterior lights are on:
- Instrument panel illumination
- Info-Display
- Illuminated switches and operation elements
Turn thumb wheel and hold until the desired brightness is obtained.

Interior lights
Courtesy light

During entry and exit of the vehicle, the courtesy lights automatically switch on and then off after a delay. It switches on for a short time even if the key is withdrawn from the ignition lock.

Operate rocker switch:
- = automatic switching on and off
press = always on
press = always off
Reading lights
Operated with \( \text{\textcopyright} \) and \( \text{\textcopyright} \) buttons.

Sunvisor lights
Illuminates when the cover is opened.

Lighting features

Entry lighting

Welcome lighting
Headlights, sidelights, tail lights and interior lights are switched on for a short time when unlocking the vehicle with the remote control. This function facilitates locating the vehicle when it is dark.

The lighting switches off immediately when the ignition is turned to the accessory position. Starting off \( \diamond \) 16

Activation or deactivation of this function can be changed in the menu Settings in the Info-Display. Vehicle personalisation \( \diamond \) 90.

The settings can be stored by the key being used \( \diamond \) 22.

Entrance lighting
The following lights will additionally switch on when driver’s door is opened:
- Some switches
- Some interior lights

Exit lighting
Headlights, sidelights and tail lights illuminate the way for an adjustable time after leaving the vehicle.

Switching on
Activation, deactivation and duration of lighting of this function can be changed in the menu Settings in the Info-Display. Vehicle personalisation \( \diamond \) 90.

The settings can be stored by the key being used \( \diamond \) 22.

1. Switch off ignition.
2. Remove ignition key.
3. Open driver's door.
4. Pull turn signal lever.
5. Close driver's door.

If the driver's door is not closed the lights switch off after two minutes.
The lighting is switched off immediately if the turn signal lever is pulled while the driver's door is open.

**Battery discharge protection**

To prevent discharge of the battery when the ignition is switched off, some interior lights are switched off automatically after some time.
If you turn off the ignition with the exterior lights on, they will automatically turn off immediately or after a few minutes depending on how dark it is outside or on the setting conditions.
But the exterior lights will turn on continuously if you turn them on manually when the ignition is off.
Introduction

General information

The Infotainment system provides you with state-of-the-art in-car infotainment.

For the AM and FM wavebands the radio is equipped with twelve automatically assignable channel presets. Furthermore, 36 channels can be allocated manually (waveband-independent).

The integrated audio player will entertain you with audio CDs and MP3/WMA CDs.

Furthermore, you can connect external data storage devices, e.g. iPod, MP3 player or USB stick (not CD 300), or a portable CD player to the Infotainment system as further audio sources.

The digital sound processor provides you with several preset equalizer modes for sound optimisation.

The navigation system (only Navi 600) with dynamic route planning will reliably guide you to your destination, and, if desired, will automatically avoid traffic jams or other traffic problems.

Optionally, the Infotainment system can be operated using controls on the steering wheel.

In addition the Infotainment system can be equipped with a mobile phone portal.

The well-thought-out design of the control elements, the clear displays and the multifunctional MENU knob enable you to control the system easily and intuitively.

Important information on operation and traffic safety

⚠️ Warning

The Infotainment system has to be used so that the vehicle can be driven safely at all times. If in doubt stop your vehicle and operate the Infotainment system while the vehicle is stationary.
Warning

The usage of the navigation system (only Navi 600) does not release the driver from the responsibility for a correct, vigilant attitude in road traffic. The related traffic regulations must always be followed.

Only make entries (e.g. addresses) with the vehicle stationary.

If a navigation instruction contradicts traffic regulations, the traffic regulations always apply.

Warning

In some areas one-way streets and other roads and entrances (e.g. pedestrian zones) that you are not allowed to turn into are not marked on the map. In such areas the Infotainment system may issue a warning that must be accepted. Here you must pay

Radio reception

Radio reception may be disrupted by static, noise, distortion or loss of reception due to

- changes in distance from the transmitter,
- multi-path reception due to reflection,
- shadowing.

Theft-deterrent feature

The Infotainment system is equipped with an electronic security system for the purpose of theft deterrent.

The Infotainment system therefore functions only in your vehicle and is worthless for a thief.
Control elements overview

Navi 600
<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Infotainment system knob ................................ 116</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Press: switch on/off Infotainment system .......... 116</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Turn: adjust volume .......... 116</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Station buttons 1...6 ............ 129</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Long press: save station .... 129</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Short press: select station .. 129</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>DEST .................................. 156</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Navigation destination entry .................. 156</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>NAV ..................................... 156</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Press once: Display map ... 156</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Press twice: Navigation menu .................. 156</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Eight-way switch ................. 156</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Navigation: move display window in map view .... 156</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>CONFIG .............................. 125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>System settings ................... 125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>RPT NAV ................................. 186</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Repeat last navigation message ............... 186</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>TP ........................................ 135</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Activate or deactivate radio traffic service .......... 135</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>TONE .................................... 122</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Tone settings ...................... 122</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>INFO ................................... 109</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Additional, situation-dependent information ...... 109</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>AS ....................................... 129</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Automatic memory levels .... 129</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Short press: select autostore list ............... 129</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Long press: save stations automatically .......... 129</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>BACK .................................. 117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Menu: one level back .......... 117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Input: delete last character or entire entry ........ 117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>FAV ..................................... 130</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Favourite lists .................. 130</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>MENU .................................. 117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Turn: mark menu options or set numeric values .... 117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Press: select/activate the marked option; confirm set value; switch function on/off 117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>CD ejection ................................ 141</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>Search forward .................... 128</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Radio: search forward ........... 128</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CD/MP3/WMA: skip track forward ................. 141</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>MUTE .................................. 116</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Activate/deactivate mute .......... 116</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>CD/MP3/WMA .............................. 146</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Start/pause replay ................ 146</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>CD/AUX .............................. 146</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Start CD/MP3/WMA replay or change audio source .......... 146</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
20  BAND .................................. 128
    Activate radio or change waveband .............................. 128
21  Search backward ................ 128
    Radio: search backward ..... 128
    CD/MP3/WMA: skip track backward ................................... 141
22  CD slot ................................. 141
Infotainment system

CD 400
<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Ø knob ................................ 116</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Press: switch on/off Infotainment system .... 116</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Turn: adjust volume ............... 116</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Station buttons 1...6 ............ 129</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Long press: save station .... 129</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Short press: select station .. 129</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Search backward ............ 128</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Radio: search backward .... 128</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CD/MP3/WMA: skip track backward ................... 141</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>CD/MP3/WMA: start/ pause replay .................. 146</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Search forward ............ 128</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Radio: search forward .... 128</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CD/MP3/WMA: skip track forward .................... 141</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>TP ..................................... 135</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Activate or deactivate radio traffic service ........ 135</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>INFO .................................... 109</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Additional, situation-dependent information .... 109</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>TONE .................................... 122</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Tone settings .................. 122</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>AS .................................... 129</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Automatic memory levels .... 129</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Short press: select autostore list ................. 129</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Long press: save stations automatically .......... 129</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>BACK .................................. 117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Menu: one level back ........ 117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Input: delete last character or entire entry .... 117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>CD ejection .................... 141</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>MENU .................................. 117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Turn: mark menu options or set numeric values .... 117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Press: select/activate the marked option; confirm set value; switch function on/off 117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>FAV ..................................... 130</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Favourite lists .................. 130</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>MUTE .................................. 116</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Activate/deactivate mute .... 116</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>CONFIG ................................ 125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>System settings ................ 125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>CD slot ............................. 141</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>CD/AUX ............................. 146</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Start CD/MP3/WMA replay or change audio source .................. 146</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>BAND .................................. 128</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Activate radio or change waveband ................. 128</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1 Ø knob ................................ 116
   Press: switch on/off
   Infotainment system .......... 116
   Turn: adjust volume .......... 116
2 Station buttons 1...6 ............ 129
   Long press: save station .... 129
   Short press: select station .. 129
3 Search backward ................ 128
   Radio: search backward .... 128
   CD/MP3/WMA: skip track
   backward .......................... 141
4 MP3: folder level higher ...... 141
5 CD/MP3/WMA: start/
   pause replay ..................... 146
6 MP3: folder level lower ...... 141
7 Search forward .................. 128
   Radio: search forward .... 128
   CD/MP3/WMA: skip track
   forward .......................... 141
8 TP ...................................... 117
   Activate or deactivate
   radio traffic service .......... 135
9 INFO ................................... 109
   Additional, situation-
   dependent information ...... 109
10 TONE .................................. 122
   Tone settings ................... 122
11 AS ..................................... 129
   Automatic memory levels .... 129
   Short press: select
   autostore list .................. 129
12 BACK .................................. 117
   Menu: one level back ........ 117
   Input: delete last character
   or entire entry .................. 117
13 CD ejection ........................ 141
14 MENU .................................... 117
   Central control for
   selection and navigation in
   menus ................................ 117
15 FAV .................................... 130
   Favourite lists ................... 130
16 MUTE .................................. 116
   Activate/deactivate mute .... 116
17 CONFIG .................................. 125
   System settings ................. 125
18 CD slot ................................ 141
19 CD/AUX .............................. 146
   Start CD/MP3/WMA
   replay or change audio
   source ............................ 146
20 BAND .................................. 128
   Activate radio or change
   waveband .......................... 128
Infotainment system

Steering wheel audio controls

1 SRC (Source) ...................... 116
   Press: select audio source .. 116
   If radio active: turn upwards/downwards to select next/previous preset radio station .......... 128
   If CD player active: turn upwards/downwards to select next/previous CD/MP3/WMA track ............... 141

2 Increase volume .................. 116

3 Reduce volume ................... 116

4 Activate/deactivate mute ..... 116

Usage

Control elements
The Infotainment system is operated via function buttons, multifunctional knobs and menus that are shown on the display.

Inputs are made optionally via:
- the central control unit in the instrument panel
- controls on the steering wheel

Switching the Infotainment system on or off
Press the \(\odot\) knob briefly. After switching on the last selected Infotainment source is active.

Automatic switch-off
If the Infotainment system has been switched on using the \(\odot\) knob when the ignition was switched off, it will switch off again automatically after 30 minutes.
Setting the volume

Turn the ♦ knob. The current setting is shown on the display.

When the Infotainment system is switched on, the last selected volume is set, if that volume is lower than the maximum start up volume.

The following can be set separately:

- the maximum start up volume ♦ 125
- the volume of the traffic announcements ♦ 125
- the volume of the navigation messages (only Navi 600) ♦ 156

Speed compensated volume

When speed compensated volume is activated ♦ 125 the volume is adapted automatically to make up for the road and wind noise as you drive.

Mute

Press the MUTE button to mute the audio sources.

To cancel mute again: turn the ♦ knob or press the MUTE button again.

Volume limitation at high temperatures

At very high temperatures inside the vehicle the Infotainment system limits the maximum adjustable volume. If necessary the volume is decreased automatically.

Modes of operation

Radio

Press the BAND button to open the radio main menu or to change between the different wavebands.

Press the MENU knob to open a submenu with options for station selection.

Detailed description of the radio functions ♦ 128.

Audio players

Press the CD/AUX button to open the CD, USB, iPod or AUX menus (if available) or to swap between these menus.

Press the MENU knob to open a submenu with options for track selection.

Detailed description of:

- CD player functions ♦ 141
- AUX input functions ♦ 146
- USB port functions (not with CD 300) ♦ 146

Navigation

(only Navi 600)

Press the NAV button to display a map showing the area around the vehicle’s current position.

Press the MENU knob to open the navigation main menu.

Detailed description of the navigation system functions ♦ 156.

Basic operation

MENU knob

The MENU knob is the central control element for the menus.

Turn

- to mark a menu option
- CD 300: to display a menu option
- to set a numeric value
Press
- to select or activate the marked option
- CD 300: to select or activate the option displayed
- to confirm a set value
- to switch a system function on/off

**BACK button**
Press the button briefly to:
- exit a menu
- return from a submenu to the next higher menu level
- delete the last character in a character sequence
Press and hold the button for a few seconds to delete the entire entry.

### Examples of menu operation

#### Examples relating to Navi 600

**Selecting an option**

Turn the **MENU knob** to move the cursor (= coloured background) to the desired option.

Press the **MENU knob** to select the marked option.

**Submenus**

An arrow on the right-hand edge of the menu indicates that after selection of the option a submenu with further options will be opened.

**Activating a setting**

Turn the **MENU knob** to mark the desired setting.

Press the **MENU knob** to activate the setting.
Setting a value

Turn the MENU knob to change the current value of the setting.
Press the MENU knob to confirm the set value.

Switching a function on or off

Turn the MENU knob to mark the function to be switched on or off.
Press the MENU knob to switch between the settings On and Off.

Entering a character sequence

To enter character sequences, e.g. road names or house numbers:
Turn the MENU knob to select the desired character.
The last character in the character sequence can be deleted using the BACK button. Pressing and holding the BACK button deletes the entire entry.
Press the MENU knob to confirm the selected character.
Examples relating to CD 400
Selecting an option

Turn the **MENU** knob to move the cursor (= coloured background) to the desired option.
Press the **MENU** knob to select the marked option.

Submenus
An arrow on the right-hand edge of the menu indicates that after selection of the option a submenu with further options will be opened.

Activating a setting

Turn the **MENU** knob to mark the desired setting.
Press the **MENU** knob to activate the setting.

Setting a value

Turn the **MENU** knob to change the current value of the setting.
Press the **MENU** knob to confirm the set value.
Switching a function on or off

Turn the MENU knob to mark the function to be switched on or off. Press the MENU knob to switch between the settings On and Off.

Examples relating to CD 300

Menu elements and symbols

The up and down arrows 1 indicate: the top menu level is active. Further options are available in the active menu.

Turn the MENU knob to display the other options in the active menu.

The angled arrow 2 indicates: a submenu with further options is available.

Press the MENU knob to select the option displayed and to open the corresponding submenu.

The arrow pointing to the right 3 indicates: the first submenu level is active (two arrows = second submenu level active).

The down arrow 4 indicates: further options are available in the active submenu.

Activating a setting

Press the MENU knob to open the corresponding settings menu.

Turn the MENU knob to display the desired setting.

Press the MENU knob to activate the setting.
Setting a value

Press the MENU knob to open the corresponding settings menu.
Turn the MENU knob to change the current value of the setting.
Press the MENU knob to confirm the set value.

Switching a function on or off

Press the MENU knob to open the corresponding settings menu.
Turn the MENU knob to mark the setting On or Off.
Press the MENU knob to confirm the marked setting.

Tone settings

Navi 600
In the tone settings menu the tone characteristic can be set differently for each radio waveband and each audio player source.
Select **Bass**, **Middle** or **Treble**.
Set the desired value for the option selected.

**Setting the volume distribution between front - rear**

Select **Fader**.
Set the desired value.

**Setting the volume distribution between right - left**

Select **Balance**.
Set the desired value.

**Setting an individual setting to “0” or “Off”**
Select the desired option and press and hold the **MENU** knob for a few seconds.

**Setting all settings to “0” or “Off”**
Press and hold the **TONE** button for a few seconds.

**Optimising the tone for the style of music**

Select **EQ** (Equalizer).
The displayed options offer optimised bass, middle and treble presettings for the relevant style of music.
Select the required option.

**CD 300 / CD 400**
In the tone settings menu the tone characteristics can be set differently for each radio waveband and each audio player source.
Press the TONE button to open the tone menu.

**Setting bass, middle and treble**

- Select **Bass**, **Midrange**: or **Treble**.
  - Set the desired value for the selected option.

**Setting the volume distribution between front - rear**

- Select **Fader**.
  - Set the desired value.

**Setting the volume distribution between right - left**

- Select **Balance**.
  - Set the desired value.

**Setting an individual setting to “0”**

- Select the desired option and press and hold the **MENU** knob for a few seconds.

**Setting all settings to "0" or "Off"**

- Press and hold the **TON** button for a few seconds.
Optimizing the tone for the style of music

Select **EQ**: (Equalizer).
The displayed options offer optimized bass, middle and treble presets for the relevant style of music.
Select the desired option.

Volume settings

**Navi 600**

**Maximum startup volume**

Press the **CONFIG** button to open the system settings menu.
Select **Radio settings** and then **Maximum startup volume**.
Set the desired value.

Speed dependent volume

Press the **CONFIG** button to open the system settings menu.
Select **Radio settings** and then **Speed dependent volume**.
Speed dependent volume can be deactivated or the degree of volume adaptation can be selected in the menu displayed.
Select the required option.
Volume of the traffic announcements (TA)
The volume of the traffic announcements can be increased or reduced proportionately to the normal audio volume.

Press the CONFIG button to open the system settings menu.
Select Radio settings, RDS options and TA volume.
Set the desired value.

CD 300 / CD 400

Maximum startup volume

Press the CONFIG button to open the system settings menu.
Select Radio settings and then Maximum startup volume.
CD 300: select Audio settings and then Start up volume.
Set the desired value.

Speed compensated volume

Press the CONFIG button to open the system settings menu.
Select Radio settings and then Auto volume control.
CD 300: select Audio settings and then Auto volume control.
Speed compensated volume can be deactivated or the degree of volume adaptation can be selected in the menu displayed.
Select the desired option.
Volume of the traffic announcements (TA)
The volume of the traffic announcements can be increased or reduced proportionately to the normal audio volume.

Press the CONFIG button to open the system settings menu.
Select Radio settings, RDS options and TA volume.
CD 300: select Audio settings, RDS options and TA volume.
Set the desired value for the volume increase or reduction.

Personalisation
(only CD 400)
Various Infotainment system settings can be separately memorised for each vehicle key (driver) of the car.

Memorised settings
By removing the vehicle key from the ignition switch the following settings are automatically saved for the key being used:
- last volume settings; one volume level for all non-phone audio sources (radio, CD player, AUX, USB)
- all radio station presets
- all tone settings; each of these settings are separately saved for each of the following audio sources (if available): AM, FM, CD player, AUX, USB
- last active audio source
- last active radio station (separately for each waveband)
- last active display mode
- last position in Audio/MP3 CD or changer unit (if available) including disk number, track number, folder
- state of shuffle songs setting (CD player)
- state of TP (Traffic Programme) setting
- cursor position for each menu on the display

Activating/deactivating personalization
Press the CONFIG button to open the system settings menu.
Select Vehicle settings and then Comfort settings.
Set Personalization by driver to On or Off.
Radio

Usage

Control buttons
The most important buttons for control of the radio are as follows:
- **BAND**: Activate radio
- **⏮️ ▶️**: Station search
- **AS**: Autostore lists
- **FAV**: Favourite lists
- **1...6**: Preset buttons
- **TP**: Radio traffic service

Activating the radio
Press the **BAND** button to open the radio main menu.
The station last played will be received.

Selecting the waveband
Press the **BAND** button once or several times to select the desired waveband.
The station last played in that waveband will be received.

Station search

Automatic station search
Briefly press the button ▶️ or ▶️ to play the next station in the station memory.

Manual station search

**Navi 600**
Press ▶️ or ▶️ button and keep pressed. Release button when the required frequency has almost been reached on the frequency display.
A search is made for the next station that can be received and it is played automatically.

**CD 300 / CD 400**
Press the button ▶️ or ▶️ for a few seconds to start a search for the next receivable station in the current waveband.
When the required frequency has been reached the station is played automatically.

Note
Manual station search: If the radio does not find a station, it switches automatically to a more sensitive search level. If it still does not find a station, the frequency that was last active is set again.

Note
FM waveband: when the RDS function is activated, only RDS stations are searched for, and when the radio traffic service (TP) is activated, only traffic service stations are searched for.

Manual station tuning

**FM waveband**
Only Navi 600: press the **MENU** knob to open the FM menu and select **Manual tuning FM**.
Turn the **MENU** knob and set the optimal reception frequency on the popup frequency display.

**AM waveband**
Turn the **MENU** knob and set the optimal reception frequency on the popup frequency display.
Autostore lists
The stations that can be received best in a waveband can be searched for and stored automatically via the autostore function.

Navi 600:

Note
The currently received station is highlighted.

CD 400:

Note
The currently received station is marked by ♪.

Each waveband has 2 autostore lists (AS 1, AS 2), in each of which 6 stations can be stored.

Automatic station storing
Keep the AS button pressed until an autostore message is displayed. The 12 strongest stations in the current waveband will be stored in the 2 autostore lists.

To abort the autostore procedure, press the MENU knob.

Storing stations manually
Stations can also be stored manually in the autostore lists.

Set the station to be stored.
Briefly press the AS button to open an autostore list or to switch to another autostore list.

To store the station in a list position: press the corresponding station button 1...6 until a confirmation message is displayed.

Note
Manually stored stations are overwritten in an automatic station storing process.

Retrieving a station
Briefly press the AS button to open an autostore list or to switch to another autostore list.

Briefly press one of the station buttons 1...6, to open the station at the corresponding list position.
Favourite lists
Stations of all wavebands can be stored manually in the favourite lists.

Navi 600

6 stations can be stored in each favourite list. The number of available favourite lists can be set (see below).

Note
The currently received station is highlighted.

Storing a station
Set the station to be stored.

Briefly press the FAV button to open a favourite list or to switch to another favourite list.
To store the station in a list position: press the corresponding station button 1...6 until a confirmation message is displayed.

Retrieving a station
Briefly press the FAV button to open a favourite list or to switch to another favourite list. Briefly press one of the station buttons 1...6, to open the station at the related list position.

Defining the number of available favourite lists

Press CONFIG button.
Select Radio settings and then Radio favourites.
Select the desired number of available favourite lists.

CD 300 / CD 400

6 stations can be stored in each favourite list. The number of available favourite lists can be set (see below).
CD 300: The number of available favourite lists is not configurable.

Note
The currently received station is marked by ●.
Storing a station
Set the station to be stored.
Briefly press the FAV button to open a favourite list or to switch to another favourite list.
To store the station in a list position: press the corresponding station button 1...6 until a confirmation message is displayed.

Retrieving a station
Briefly press the FAV button to open a favourite list or to switch to another favourite list.
Briefly press one of the station buttons 1...6, to open the station at the related list position.

Defining the number of available favourite lists
(not CD 300)

Press the CONFIG button.
Select Radio settings and then Radio favourites.
Select the desired number of available favourite lists.

Waveband menus
Alternative facilities for station selection are available via waveband specific menus.
With the radio main menu active press the MENU knob to open the relevant waveband menu.

Note
The following FM specific displays are shown as examples.

Navi 600

Favourites list
Select Favourites list. All stations saved in the favourites lists are displayed.
Select the required station.

**Note**
The currently received station is marked by 🎧.

**Manual tuning**
Description see "Manual station tuning" above.

**Station lists**
Select AM station list or FM station list.

All receivable AM/FM stations in the current reception area are displayed.

**Note**
If no station list has been created beforehand, the Infotainment system performs an automatic station search.

A station search is started. Once the search is finished, the station previously selected is played.
To cancel the station search: press MENU knob.

**Note**
If a waveband specific station list is updated the corresponding category list (if available) is also updated.

**Important information on updating the station lists**
The dual tuner in the Infotainment system continuously updates the station lists in the background. This ensures that, e.g., the station lists always contain the stations that can be received in the local area during a long motorway journey. As the automatic updating takes a certain amount of time, not all stations that can be received may be available at once in the station list at a sudden change in reception area. In such circumstances the updating of the station lists can be accelerated using the corresponding command for updating a station list.

Select the required station.

**Note**
The currently received station is marked by 🎧.

**Updating station lists**
If the stations stored in a waveband-specific station list can no longer be received:
Select the corresponding command to update a station list.
**Category lists**
Numerous RDS stations broadcast a PTY code, which specifies the type of programme transmitted (e.g. news). Some stations also change the PTY code depending on the content currently being transmitted.

The Infotainment system stores these stations, sorted by programme type, in the corresponding category list.

To search for a programme type determined by station: select the waveband specific category list option.

A list of programme types available at the moment is displayed. Select desired programme type. A list of stations is displayed that transmit a programme of the selected type.

Select the required station. The category list is also updated when the corresponding waveband specific station list is updated.

**Note**
The currently received station is marked by 🔄.
Select the required station.

**Note**
The currently received station is marked by 🅱️.

**Stations lists**
Select AM stations list or FM stations list.

All receivable AM/FM stations in the current reception area are displayed.

**Note**
If no station list has been created beforehand, the Infotainment system performs an automatic station search.

Select the required station.

**Note**
The currently received station is marked by 🅱️.

**Updating stations lists**
If the stations stored in a waveband-specific station list can no longer be received:
Select the corresponding command to update a station list.

CD 400: The dual tuner of the Infotainment system continuously updates the FM stations list in the background. No manual update is required.

A station search is started. Once the search is completed the station last received will be played.
To abort the station search, press the MENU knob.

**Note**
If a waveband specific station list is updated the corresponding category list (if available) is also updated.

**Category lists**
Numerous RDS stations broadcast a PTY code, which specifies the type of programme transmitted (e.g. news). Some stations also change the PTY code depending on the content currently being transmitted.

The Infotainment system stores these stations, sorted by programme type, in the corresponding category list.
To search for a programme type determined by station: select the waveband specific category list option.
A list of programme types available at the moment is displayed.
Select the desired programme type. A list of stations is displayed that transmit a programme of the selected type.

Select the desired station. CD 300: The next receivable station of the selected type is searched for and is played.
The category list is also updated when the corresponding waveband specific station list is updated.

Note
The currently received station is marked by ✪.

Radio data system (RDS)
RDS is a service of FM stations that considerably facilitates the finding of the desired station and its fault-free reception.

Advantages of RDS
- On the display the programme name of the set station appears instead of its frequency.
- On station search the Infotainment system tunes in to RDS stations only.
- The Infotainment system always tunes into the best receivable broadcasting frequency of the set station by means of AF (Alternative Frequency).
- Depending on the station that is received the Infotainment system displays radio text that can contain, for example, information about the current programme.
Configuring RDS

To open the menu for the RDS configuration:
Press the CONFIG button.
Select Radio settings and then RDS options.

Switching RDS on and off
Set RDS to On or Off.

Note
If RDS is switched off, it will be automatically switched on again when a radio station is changed (by search function or preset button).

Switching regionalization on and off
(RDS must be activated for regionalization.)
At certain times some RDS stations broadcast regionally different programmes on different frequencies.
Set Regional to On or Off.

Only alternative frequencies (AF) with the same regional programmes are selected.
If regionalization is switched off, alternative frequencies of the stations are selected without regard to regional programmes.

RDS scrolling text
Some RDS stations use the lines for indicating the name of the programme to also indicate additional information. During this process the programme name is hidden.
To prevent additional information being displayed:
Set RDS-text scroll freeze to On.

Radio text
If RDS and reception of an RDS station are activated, information about the programme that is currently receivable and about the music track being played at the moment are displayed below the programme name.
To show or hide the information:
Set Radio text to On or Off.
**TA volume**
The volume of the traffic announcements (TA) can be preset 125.

**Radio traffic service**
(TP = Traffic Programme)
Radio traffic service stations are RDS stations that broadcast traffic news.

**Switching the radio traffic service on and off**
To switch the traffic announcement standby facility of the Infotainment system on and off:
Press the TP button.
- If the radio traffic service is switched on, [ ] is indicated on the display in black (grey if radio traffic service is switched off).
- Only radio traffic service stations are received.
- If the current station is not a radio traffic service station, a search is started automatically for the next radio traffic service station.

- If a radio traffic service station has been found, [TP] is indicated on the display in black. If no radio traffic service stations are found, TP is displayed in grey.
- Traffic announcements are played at the preset TA volume 125.
- If the radio traffic service is switched on, CD/MP3 replay is interrupted for the duration of the traffic announcement.

**Listening to traffic announcements only**
Switch on the radio traffic service and completely turn down the volume of the Infotainment system.

**Blocking out traffic announcements**
To block out a traffic announcement, e.g. during CD/MP3 replay:
Press TP button or the MENU knob to confirm the cancel message on the display.
The traffic announcement is aborted, but the radio traffic service remains switched on.

**EON (Enhanced Other Networks)**
With EON you can listen to radio traffic announcements even if the station you have set does not broadcast its own radio traffic service. If such a station is set, it is displayed in black as for radio traffic service stations TP.

**CD 300 / CD 400**

**Configuring RDS**
To open the menu for the RDS configuration:
Press the CONFIG button.
Select **Radio settings** and then **RDS options**.

CD 300: Select **Audio settings** and then **RDS options**.

**TA volume**
The volume of the traffic announcements (TA) can be preset 125.

**Switching RDS on and off**
Set the option **RDS** to **On** or **Off**.

**Note**
If RDS is switched off, it will be automatically switched on again when a radio station is changed (by search function or preset button).

**Traffic announcement (TA)**
To switch the TA function on or off permanently:
Set the option **Traffic announcement (TA)** to **On** or **Off**.

**Switching regionalization on and off**
(RDS must be activated for regionalization.)
At certain times some RDS stations broadcast regionally different programmes on different frequencies.
Set the option **Regional (REG)** to **On** or **Off**.

Only alternative frequencies (AF) with the same regional programmes are selected.

If regionalization is switched off, alternative frequencies of the stations are selected without regard to regional programmes.

**RDS-scrolling text**
Some RDS stations hide the programme name in the display line in order to display additional information.

To prevent additional information being displayed:
Set RDS-**Text scroll freeze** to **On**.

**Radio text:**
If RDS and reception of an RDS station are activated, information about the programme that is currently receivable and about the music track being played at the moment are displayed below the programme name.

To show or hide the information:
Set the option **Radio text:** to **On** or **Off**.

**Radio traffic service**
(TP = Traffic Programme)
Radio traffic service stations are RDS stations that broadcast traffic news.
Switching the radio traffic service on and off
To switch the traffic announcement standby facility of the Infotainment system on and off:
Press the TP button.
- If the radio traffic service is switched on, [ ] is displayed in the radio main menu.
- Only radio traffic service stations are received.
- If the current station is not a radio traffic service station, a search is started automatically for the next radio traffic service station.
- If a radio traffic service station has been found, [TP] is displayed in the radio main menu.
- Traffic announcements are played at the preset TA volume 125.
- If the radio traffic service is switched on, CD/MP3 replay is interrupted for the duration of the traffic announcement.

Listening to traffic announcements only
Switch on the radio traffic service and completely turn down the volume of the Infotainment system.

Blocking out traffic announcements
To block out a traffic announcement, e.g. during CD/MP3 replay:
Press TP button or the MENU knob to confirm the cancel message on the display.
The traffic announcement is aborted, but the radio traffic service remains switched on.

EON (Enhanced Other Networks)
With EON you can listen to radio traffic announcements even if the station you have set does not broadcast its own radio traffic service. If such a station is set, it is displayed in black as for radio traffic service stations TP.

CD Player
General information
Navi 600
The Infotainment system’s CD player can replay audio CDs and MP3/WMA CDs.

Important information about audio CDs and MP3/WMA CDs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Caution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Under no circumstances place DVDs, single-CDs with a diameter of 8 cm or shaped CDs in the audio player. You must not put any stickers on CDs. These discs can get jammed in the CD drive and ruin the drive. An expensive replacement of the device will then be necessary.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Audio CDs with copy protection, which are not in compliance with the audio CD standard, may not play correctly or not at all.
■ Self-recorded CD-Rs and CD-RWs are more vulnerable to mishandling than prerecorded CDs. Correct handling, especially in the case of self-recorded CD-Rs and CD-RWs, must be ensured; see below.
■ Self-recorded CD-Rs and CD-RWs may not play correctly or not at all.
■ On mixed mode CDs (combinations of audio and data, e.g. MP3), only the audio tracks will be detected and played.
■ Avoid leaving fingerprints when you change CDs.
■ Put CDs back in their sleeves immediately after removing them from the audio player in order to protect them from damage and dirt.
■ Dirt and liquids on CDs can smear the lens of the audio player inside the device and cause faults.
■ Protect CDs from heat and direct sunlight.
■ The following restrictions apply for the data stored on an MP3/WMA CD:

Maximum folder structure depth: 11 levels.
Maximum number of MP3/WMA files that can be saved: 1000.
WMA files with Digital Rights Management (DRM) from online music shops cannot be played.
WMA files can only be played back safely if they were created with Windows Media Player version 8 or later.
Applicable playlist extensions: .m3u, .pls
Playlist entries must be in the form of relative paths.

This chapter deals only with playing MP3 files since the operation for MP3 and WMA files is identical. When a CD with WMA files is loaded MP3 related menus are displayed.

**CD 300 / CD 400**
The Infotainment system's CD player can play audio CDs and MP3/WMA CDs.

**Important information about audio CDs and MP3/WMA CDs**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Caution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
Under no circumstances place DVDs, single-CDs with a diameter of 8 cm or shaped CDs in the audio player.
You must not put any stickers on CDs. These discs can get jammed in the CD drive and ruin the drive. An expensive replacement of the device will then be necessary.

■ The following CD formats can be used:
CD-ROM Mode 1 and Mode 2.
CD-ROM XA Mode 2, Form 1 and Form 2.

■ The following file formats can be used:
ISO9660 Level 1, Level 2, (Romeo, Joliet).
MP3 and WMA files written in any format other than listed above may not play correctly, and their file
names and folder names may not be displayed correctly.

**Note**

ISO 13346 is not supported. It may be required to manually select ISO 9660 when burning an audio CD as example with Windows 7.

- Audio CDs with copy protection, which are not in compliance with the audio CD standard, may not play correctly or not at all.
- Self-recorded CD-Rs and CD-RWs are more vulnerable to mishandling than prerecorded CDs. Correct handling, especially in the case of self-recorded CD-Rs and CD-RWs, must be ensured. See below.
- Self-recorded CD-Rs and CD-RWs may not play correctly or not at all. In such cases it is not the equipment that is at fault.
- On mixed mode CDs (audio tracks and compressed files, e.g. MP3, are stored), the audio tracks part and the compressed files part can be played separately.

- Avoid leaving fingerprints when you change CDs.
- Put CDs back in their sleeves immediately after removing them from the CD player in order to protect them from damage and dirt.
- Dirt and liquids on CDs can smear the lens of the CD player inside the device and cause faults.
- Protect CDs from heat and direct sunlight.

- The following restrictions apply for the data stored on an MP3/WMA CD:
  - Number of tracks: max. 999.
  - Number of folders: max. 255.
  - Folder structure depth: max. 64 levels (recommended: max. 8 levels).
  - Number of playlists: max. 15.
  - Number of songs per playlist: max. 255.

- Applicable playlist extensions: .m3u, .pls, .asx, .wpl.

- This chapter deals only with playing MP3 files since the operation for MP3 and WMA files is identical. When a CD with WMA files is loaded MP3 related menus are displayed.

### Usage

Navi 600
Starting CD replay
Push CD with the labelled side upward into the CD slot until it is pulled in.
CD replay starts automatically and the Audio CD or Audio MP3 menu is displayed.
If there is already a CD in the unit, but the Audio CD or Audio MP3 menu is not active:
Press CD/AUX button.
The Audio CD or Audio MP3 menu is opened and CD replay is started.
Depending on the data stored on the audio CD or MP3 CD differing information about the CD and the current music track will be shown on the display.
If the Audio CD or Audio MP3 menu does not appear after pressing the CD/AUX button, there is still a navigation CD in the CD slot. Press \△ button to remove the CD.

Selecting a track
Turn the MENU knob to display a list of all tracks on the CD. The currently played track is preselected.
Select the desired track.

Skipping to the next track or previous track
Briefly press ▶ or ◀ button once or several times.

Track search forward or backward
Briefly press ▶ or ◀ button and then press ▶ or ◀ button again and keep pressed until the desired track is displayed.

Fast forward or rewind
Press the button ▶ or ◀ and hold it down to fast forward or rewind the current track.

Selecting tracks using the audio CD or MP3 menu
During audio CD replay

Press the MENU knob to open the audio CD related menu.
To play all tracks in random order: set Shuffle songs (RDM) to On.
To select a track on the audio CD: select Track list and then select the desired track.
During MP3 replay

Press the **MENU** knob to open the MP3 related menu.

To play all tracks in random order: set **Shuffle songs (RDM)** to **On**.

To select a track from a folder or playlist (if available): select **Folders** or **Playlists**.

Select a folder or playlist and then select the desired track.

Select **Search** to open a menu with additional options for track search and selection.

Depending on the amount of tracks saved, the search process may take several minutes.

Select a search option and then select the desired track.

### Removing a CD

Press **△** button.

The CD is pushed out of the CD slot.

If the CD is not removed after ejection, it will be drawn back in again automatically after a few seconds.

### Starting CD replay

Press the **CD/AUX** button to open the CD or MP3 menu.

If there is a CD in the CD player, CD replay is started.

Depending on the data stored on the audio CD or MP3 CD differing information about the CD and the current music track will be shown on the display.
Inserting a CD
Insert a CD with the printed side facing up into the CD slot until it is drawn in.

Note
If a CD is inserted, a CD symbol is shown in the top line of the display.

Changing the standard page view (only CD 300)
During audio CD or MP3 replay: press the MENU knob and then select Default CD page view or Default MP3 page view.
Select the desired option.

Changing the folder level (only CD 300, MP3 replay)
Press the button △ or □ to change to a higher or lower folder level.

Skipping to the next track or previous track
Briefly press the button ◀ or ▶.

Fast forward or rewind
Press the button ◀ or ▶ and hold it down to fast forward or rewind the current track.

Selecting tracks using the audio CD or MP3 menu
During audio CD replay
Press the MENU knob to open the audio CD related menu.
To play all tracks in random order: set Shuffle songs to On.
To select a track on the audio CD: select Tracks list and then select the desired track.

During MP3 replay
Press the MENU knob to open the MP3 related menu.
To play all tracks in random order: set Shuffle songs to On.
To select a track from a folder or playlist (if available): select Playlists/Folders.
Select a folder or playlist and then select the desired track.

Note
If a CD contains both audio and MP3 data, the audio data can be selected from Playlists/Folders.
To open a menu with additional options for track search and selection: select **Search**. What options are available depends on the data saved on the MP3 CD.

The search process on the MP3 CD may take several minutes. During this time the station last played will be received.

**Removing a CD**

Press the △ button.

The CD is pushed out of the CD slot. If the CD is not removed after ejection, it will be drawn back in again automatically after a few seconds.

**AUX input**

**General information**

Under the cover on the centre console there is an AUX socket for the connection of external audio sources.

**Navi 600**: 

**CD 300 / CD 400**: 

**Note**

The socket must always be kept clean and dry.

It is possible, for example, to connect a portable CD player with a 3.5 mm jack plug to the AUX input.
Usage

Navi 600

Press the CD/AUX button once or several times to activate the AUX mode.
An audio source that is connected to the AUX input can be operated only via the control elements of the audio source.

CD 300 / CD 400

Press the CD/AUX button once or several times to activate the AUX mode.
An audio source that is connected to the AUX input can be operated only via the control elements of the audio source.

USB port

General information

Navi 600

Under the cover on the centre console there is a USB socket for the connection of external audio sources.

Note
The socket must always be kept clean and dry.

Note
Before folding down the cover on the centre console, please verify that the USB drive cannot be damaged.
An MP3 player, USB drive or an iPod can be connected to the USB port. Those devices are operated via the controls and menus of the Infotainment system.

Note
Not all MP3 player, USB drive and iPod models are supported by the Infotainment system.

Important information

**MP3 player and USB drives**
- The MP3 players and USB drives connected must comply with the USB Mass Storage Class specification (USB MSC).
- Only MP3 players and USB drives with a cluster size smaller or equal 64 kBytes in the FAT16/FAT32 file system are supported.
- Hard disk drives (HDD) and are not supported.
- USB hubs are not supported.
- The following restrictions apply for the data stored on an MP3 Player or USB device:
  - Maximum folder structure depth: 11 levels.
  - Maximum number of MP3/WMA files that can be saved: 1000.
  - WMA files with Digital Rights Management (DRM) from online music shops cannot be played.
  - WMA files can only be played back safely if they were created with Windows Media Player version 8 or later.
  - Applicable playlist extensions: .m3u, .pls
  - Playlist entries must be in the form of relative paths.
  - The system attribute for folders/files that contain audio data must not be set.

**CD 400**

Under the cover on the centre console there is a USB socket for the connection of external audio sources.

Note
The socket must always be kept clean and dry.

Note
Do not insert a USB drive device longer than 70 mm. A longer device may be damaged when folding down the armrest.
The following devices can be connected to the USB port:

- iPod
- Zune
- PlaysForSure device (PFD)
- USB drive

Those devices are operated via the controls and menus of the Infotainment system.

**Note**
Not all iPod, Zune, PFD or USB drive models are supported by the Infotainment system.

---

### Playing saved audio files

**Navi 600**

**MP3 player / USB drives**

Press the CD/AUX button once or several times to activate the audio USB mode.

Replay of the audio data stored on the USB device is started.

The operation of data sources connected via USB is the same as for an audio MP3/WMA CD 141.

---

### iPod

Press the CD/AUX button once or several times to activate the audio iPod mode.

Replay of the audio data stored on the iPod is started.

The operation of the iPod connected via USB is mainly the same as for an audio MP3/WMA CD 141.

Below only the aspects of operation that are different/additional are described.
iPod functions

Depending on the data saved, there are various options for the selection and playing of tracks.
Press the MENU knob and then select Search to display the options available.
The search process on the device may take several seconds.

CD 400

Press the CD/AUX button once or several times to activate the USB mode.
Replay of the audio data stored on the USB device is started.
The operation of data sources connected via USB is mainly the same as for an audio MP3 CD. Below only the aspects of operation that are different/additional are described.

Selecting tracks using the USB menu

Press the MENU knob to open the USB related menu.
To play all tracks in succession: select Play all.
To display a menu with various additional options for track search and selection: select Search.
The search process on the USB device may take several minutes. During this time the station last played will be received.

To play all tracks in random order: set Shuffle songs (random) to On.
To repeat the currently played track: set Repeat to On.

**Bluetooth music**

**General information**
(only CD 400 with Bluetooth PDIM)
Bluetooth enabled audio sources (e. g. music mobile phones, MP3 players featuring Bluetooth, etc.), which support Bluetooth music protocol A2DP, can be connected wirelessly to the Infotainment system.

**Important information**
- Before a Bluetooth device can be connected to the Infotainment system, it must first be paired to the system 150.
- The Infotainment system only connects to Bluetooth devices that support A2DP (Advanced Audio Distribution Profile) version 1.2 or higher.
- The Bluetooth device must support AVRCP (Audio Video Remote Control Profile) version 1.0 or higher. If the device does not support AVRCP only the volume can be controlled via the Infotainment system.
- Before connecting the Bluetooth device to the Infotainment system, become acquainted with its user guide for Bluetooth functions.

**Bluetooth music setup**
With the Bluetooth music setup menu pairing and connection of Bluetooth devices to the Infotainment system are carried out.
Activating the Bluetooth music setup menu
Press the CD/AUX button once or several times to activate AUX, USB or Bluetooth mode.
Press the MENU knob and then select Bluetooth setup.

Pairing a Bluetooth device

Important information
- The pairing process is disabled when the vehicle is moving.
- Up to five devices can be paired to the system.
- The Infotainment system automatically connects to the first device in the list of currently paired devices.
- Only one paired device can be connected to the Infotainment system at a time.
- Pairing normally only needs to be carried out once, unless changes to the pairing information have been made or the device is deleted.

Performing pairing
Select Connect to new device.

The Infotainment system asks a series of questions to determine what type of Bluetooth device is being paired.
After determination is performed, the Bluetooth device needs to be put into discovery mode (see user guide of Bluetooth device).
Some Bluetooth devices may require a PIN code in order to complete the pairing process. Locate the device named GMusicConnect in the list on the Bluetooth device and follow the instructions on the device to enter the PIN code provided by the Infotainment system.

Connecting a paired device
Select Select device.
A list of all Bluetooth devices currently paired to the Infotainment system is displayed.
Select the desired device. The device is connected to the Infotainment system.

If another Bluetooth device is currently connected to the Infotainment system this device is disconnected from the system.

Removing a paired device
Select Remove device.
A list of all Bluetooth devices currently paired to the Infotainment system is displayed.
Select the desired device. The device is removed from the list of paired devices.

Changing the default PIN
Select Change default PIN.
Select one of the pre-defined PIN codes, or select Other to create a new PIN.

To create a new PIN:
Select Other and then the desired length of the PIN code.
Select the digits of the desired PIN code one at a time.

**Operation**

Press the CD/AUX button once or several times to activate Bluetooth mode.

The first device in the list of currently paired Bluetooth devices 150 is automatically connected (if available) to the Infotainment system.

To connect to another paired Bluetooth device 150.

**Starting replay of tracks**
Depending on the connected Bluetooth device:
- replay of music starts automatically or
- replay of music has to be started with the controls on the Bluetooth device.

Replay of music data stored on the Bluetooth device can now be controlled via the Infotainment system using the ◀, ▶ and ▶/II buttons.

**Skipping to next or previous track**
Briefly press the button ◀ or ▶.

**Fast forward or rewind**
Press the button ◀ or ▶ and hold it down to fast forward or rewind the current track.

**Pause replay**
Press the ▶/II button.
To restart replay press the ▶/II button again.
Digital picture frame

General information

Using the digital picture frame function (only Navi 600 / Navi 900) you can view your favourite pictures (or photos), one at a time, on the display of the Infotainment system.

You can download your favourite pictures from a USB drive connected to the USB port 146 of the Infotainment system.

Up to 10 pictures can be stored in the Infotainment system's memory.

The pictures are shown on the display in their original ratio (borders if necessary are black) and orientation.

Important information

■ The pictures you want to download need to be stored in the root directory (e.g., "F:\") of the USB drive.

■ Only the first 100 pictures (sequentially sorted as stored in the root directory of the USB drive) will be offered for download.

■ Only pictures in JPEG standard format (file extensions, e.g., .jpg or .jpeg) are supported.

Example: "F:\myPicture.jpg", where "F:\" is the root directory of the USB drive.

■ The maximum supported resolution of a picture is 12 Mega pixel.

Pictures with higher resolutions are down-scaled (resized) during download.

Pictures with lower resolutions are not up-scaled (not resized) during download and centred in the middle of the display.

Usage

Downloading and/or removing pictures

Connect a USB drive with your favourite pictures (or photos) stored on it to the USB port 146 of the Infotainment system.

Press the CONFIG button, select Display settings, and then select Picture frame. The menu shown below is displayed.

Select Add / Remove pictures to open the menu shown below.
The menu shows a list with the file names of all pictures (note the restrictions described in "Important information" above) stored in the root directory of the connected USB drive.

If pictures were already stored in the Infotainment system's memory, that "old" pictures are listed first on the menu and indicated by MEM, see image below.

If you want to have removed "old" pictures, you need to deselect them before downloading new pictures.

Select max. 10 pictures that you want to be downloaded (added) to the Infotainment system's memory or stay stored in that memory.

Select **Confirm** to start the picture download and/or removal.

A message is displayed that shows how many pictures are going to be downloaded and/or removed.

Select **Continue** if you want to start the download and/or removal.

**Displaying pictures**

Pictures stored in the Infotainment system's memory can be shown on the display one at a time.

Press the **CONFIG** button, select **Display settings**, select **Picture frame**, and then select **Picture selection**. The menu shown below is displayed.

Select the picture you want to be shown on the display.

Press the **INFO** button several times until the currently selected picture is shown on the display.

To display a default Infotainment menu again, press any button on the Infotainment system.
As long as a picture stays selected in the Picture selection menu, it can be displayed at any time using the INFO button.

Navigation

General information
The navigation system will reliably guide you to your destination without the need to read maps, even if you have no local knowledge whatsoever.

The current traffic situation is taken into account in the route calculation if dynamic route guidance is used. For this purpose the Infotainment system receives traffic announcements in the current reception area via RDS-TMC.

The navigation system cannot, however, take into account traffic incidents, traffic regulations changed at short notice and hazards or problems that arise suddenly (e.g. road works).

Functioning of the navigation system
The position and movement of the vehicle are detected by the navigation system using sensors. The travelled distance is determined by the vehicle’s speedometer signal, turning movements on bends by a gyro sensor. The position is determined by the GPS satellites (Global Positioning System).

By comparing the sensor signals with the digital maps on the map SD card, it is possible to determine the position with an accuracy of approx. 10 m.

The system will also work with poor GPS reception, however, the accuracy of the determination of the position will be reduced.

Caution
The usage of the navigation system does not release the driver from the responsibility for a correct, vigilant attitude in road traffic. The relevant traffic regulations must always be followed. If a navigation instruction contradicts traffic regulations, the traffic regulations always apply.
After the entry of the destination address or point of interest (nearest petrol station, hotel, etc.) the route is calculated from the current location to the destination selected.

The route guidance is provided by voice output and an arrow, as well as with the aid of a multi-colour map display.

**TMC traffic information system and dynamic route guidance**

The TMC traffic information system receives all current traffic information from TMC radio stations. If dynamic route guidance is active, this information is included in the calculation of the overall route. During this process, the route is planned so that traffic problems related to pre-selected criteria are avoided.

If there is a traffic problem during active route guidance, depending on the pre-settings, a message appears as to whether the route should be changed.

TMC traffic information is displayed in the route guidance display as symbols or as detailed text on the TMC messages menu.

To be able to use TMC traffic information, the system has to receive TMC stations in the relevant region.

Dynamic route guidance only works if traffic information is received via the TMC traffic information system.

The dynamic route guidance function can be deactivated in the Navigation options menu, see chapter "Guidance" 179.

**Map data**

All required map data is stored on an SD card provided with the Infotainment system.

Detailed descriptions on map SD card handling and replacement, see chapter "Maps" 186.

---

**Usage**

**Control elements**

The most important navigation-specific control elements are as follows:

- **NAV button**: activate navigation; show current position (if route guidance inactive); show calculated route (if route guidance active); toggle between full map display, arrow display (if route guidance active) and split screen display, see "Information on the display" below.

- **DEST button**: open menu with options for destination entry.

- **Eight-way switch**: move display window in navigation map view; to select the destination, press in the required direction to position the crosswires over a destination on the map.

- **RPT NAV button**: repeat last route guidance message.

**Activating the navigation system**

Press the NAV button.
The map of the current location is shown on the display, see "Information on the display" below.

Route guidance messages
In addition to the visual instructions on the display (see "Information on the display" below), route guidance messages will be announced when route guidance is active.

Presetting the volume of route guidance messages: see "Setting up the navigation system" below.

Adjusting the volume of route guidance messages while they are announced: turn the ☺ knob.

Repeating the last announced route guidance message: press the RPT NAV button.

Information on the display

Route guidance not active

If route guidance is not active, the following information is displayed:

- In the top line: time, street name of current position, exterior temperature.
- Address and geographic coordinates of current position.
- Map display of the area around the current position.
- On the map: current position marked by a red triangle.

A compass symbol that indicates the north direction.

If no GPS signal is available at the current position, a crossed "GPS" symbol is displayed below the compass symbol.

The currently selected map scale (change scale: turn MENU knob).

Note
To change to full map display: press NAV button.

Route guidance active
If route guidance is active, the following information is displayed (depending on the current Navigation options settings, see chapter "Guidance" ◁ 179):

If route guidance is not active, the following information is displayed:

- In the top line: time, street name of current position, exterior temperature.
- Address and geographic coordinates of current position.
- Map display of the area around the current position.
- On the map: current position marked by a red triangle.
Information in the top line

- Time
- Distance to the final destination
- Arrival time or travel time
- Exterior temperature

Information on the arrow display

- A big arrow representing the direction to follow.
- A small arrow representing the next but one driving recommendation.
- Distance to the next intersection.
- Streets leading off the current street to follow.

- Below the arrow symbol: the name of the current street to follow.
- Above the arrow symbol: the name of the street to follow after the next intersection.

While driving on highways:

- Driving direction and distance to the next highway exit, which you need to follow.
- Distances to the next service areas, parking areas, intersections and/or exits on the highway.
- When reaching a highway intersection information regarding lane guidance is displayed.

If the option **Highway lane guidance** is activated in the **Display route guidance** menu (see chapter "Guidance" 179) the following type of illustration is displayed:
Information on the map display

On the right side of the display the following information is shown:
- A compass symbol that indicates the north direction.
- If no GPS signal (see chapter "General information" 155) is available at the current position: a crossed "GPS" symbol is displayed below the compass symbol.
- The currently selected map scale (change scale: turn MENU knob).

On the map the following information is shown:
- The route as a blue line.
- The current position as a red triangle.
- The final destination as a chequered flag.
- Various symbols (see chapter "Symbols overview" 189) that indicate traffic information and general information or points of interest.

Setting up the navigation system
Press the CONFIG button and then select Navigation settings to open a menu with navigation-specific settings.

Navigation volume
The relative volumes of the navigation message (Announcement) and the audio source (Background) during a navigation message can be preset.
Set the desired values for **Announcement** and **Background**.
To test the current settings: select **Volume test**.

**TMC settings**
Select **Infotypes** to open a submenu with various options to define whether and which traffic message infotypes are to be displayed on the active route guidance map.
When **User defined** is selected, the infotypes that are to be displayed can be defined.

**Sort criteria**
Select whether traffic messages are to be displayed in an order based on distance or street name.

**Warning messages when route guidance is inactive**
Decide whether the Infotainment system should announce warning messages even if no route guidance is active.

**Delete lists**
Select whether all entries in the **Address book** or in the **Last destinations** are to be deleted.

**Import individual POIs**
Only applicable if a USB drive with points of interest (POI) data stored on it is connected to the USB port 146 of the Infotainment system.

Importing POI data from a USB drive, see "Exporting and importing POI data" below.

**Delete all imported POIs**
Only applicable if POI data were imported to the Infotainment system, see "Exporting and importing POI data" below.

Select this menu item to remove all imported POI data from the myPOIs memory of the Infotainment system.

**Note**
It is not possible to directly remove individual imported points of interest from the myPOIs memory.
If you want to remove individual imported POIs: import updated POI data to the Infotainment system that do not contain the address data of the regarding POIs.
To remove all imported POIs of a certain category: import an empty POI data file of the regarding category to the Infotainment system.

Export POIs
Exports all POI data stored in the myPOIs memory of the Infotainment system to a USB drive connected to the USB port 3 146, see "Exporting and importing POI data" below.

Delete Home address
Deletes the currently set home address (displayed in the Enter destination menu, see chapter "Destination input" 3 165).

Exporting and importing POI data

Introductory explanations

Types of POI data
The Infotainment system provides the following types of points of interest data:

- Predefined Points of Interest stored on the map SD card and indicated by icons on the map display.
- Favourite destination addresses that were stored in the Address book.

You can export these address book data to a USB drive for later use, e.g., in other cars.
- Individual POIs: favourite destination addresses that were stored in the myPOIs memory.

You can export these individual POI data to a USB drive for later use, e.g., in other cars.
- User defined POIs: favourite destination addresses that you defined via GPS coordinates (taken, e.g., from a topographical map) and that you entered into text files.

You can store these user defined POI data on a USB drive and later import the data to the myPOIs memory of the Infotainment system, see below.
- Imported POIs: favourite destination addresses that were previously stored on a USB drive and then imported to the myPOIs memory of the Infotainment system.

Advantages of POI export and import

The export and import of points of interest data offer you, e.g., the following advantages:

- Define and store your favourite destination addresses only once, and later use these address data in other cars. See "Exporting and importing individual POIs and address book entries" below.
- Define your favourite destination addresses conveniently at home, and later use them in your car. See "Creating and importing user defined POIs" below.
- Clearly arrange a large amount of destination addresses, e.g., favourite destination addresses of
other family members or destination addresses for your next journey or business trip in separate submenus.
See "Organizing the POI data in several subfolders" below.

Exporting and importing individual POIs and address book entries

Brief description:
1. Connect a USB drive to the USB port of your car’s Infotainment system.
2. Store (export) your favourite destination addresses on the USB drive.
3. Connect the USB drive to the USB port of a car equipped with a Navi 600 or Navi 900 system.
4. Download (import) the address data to the car’s Infotainment system.

After the import, the addresses can be selected as destinations for route guidance.
Detailed descriptions see below.

Exporting POI data to a USB drive

Connect a USB drive to the USB port of the Infotainment system, see chapter "USB port" 146.

Press the CONFIG button, select Navigation settings and then select Export POIs.
The Export POIs menu is displayed.

By default all individual POIs stored in the myPOIs memory and all address book entries will be exported.
If desired, deselect the address data types that you do not want to be exported.

Select Start export to store the address data of the selected type(s) on the connected USB drive.
The address data will be stored in a folder named myPOIs that is located in the root directory of the USB drive.
For each exported POI category, e.g. Restaurant or Private, you will find a correspondingly named file in that folder.
Examples:
F:\myPOIs\Restaurant_3.poi or F:\myPOIs\Private_1.poi, where F:\ is the root directory of the USB drive.

Note
If files with POI data of the same category are already stored on the USB drive in the myPOIs folder, these old file versions will be overwritten by equally named new file versions.
The folder myPOIs and the files with POI data should not be renamed or moved into another folder on the USB drive. Otherwise the Infotainment system will not be able to import the address data again.
Importing POI data from a USB drive
Connect a USB drive with POI data stored on it (details see above) to the USB port of the Infotainment system, see chapter "USB port"  146.

To start the import: press the CONFIG button, select Navigation settings, select Import individual POIs and then select Continue.

All POI data stored on the USB drive is imported to the myPOIs memory of the Infotainment system.

After the import is finished, the imported POIs are selectable as destinations via the Enter destination menu, see chapter "Destination input"  165.

Creating and importing user defined POIs
User defined points of interest need to be defined via GPS coordinates that can be taken, e.g., from a topographical map.

The GPS coordinates and further address data need to be entered into text files, each file representing a POI category.

Brief description:
1. Create the text files for the POI data.
2. Enter the desired address data into the text files.
3. Store the text files with your POI data on a USB drive.
4. Connect the USB drive to the USB port of your car's Infotainment system.
5. Download (import) the text files with your POI data to the Infotainment system.

After the import, the addresses can be selected as destinations for route guidance.

Detailed descriptions see below.

Creating the text files for POI data
You can assign your favourite destination addresses to 20 different POI categories, with each POI category assigned a number, see "POI categories and assigned numbers" below.

For each POI category you need to create a separate text file.

The text files can be created, e.g., by using a simple text editor software.

Note
The text editor must support the UTF-8 character encoding for Unicode.

Each text file name need to consist of the category name, a single underscore, the category's number and the file extension .poi.

Example file names:
- Business_2.poi
- Home & Living_8.poi
- Culture_15.poi

Note
The length of the text file names is limited to 32 characters.

POI categories and assigned numbers:

Entering POI data into the text files
The image below shows a sample text file named Home & Living_8.poi with some sample POI data:


The GPS coordinates need to be expressed in decimal degrees.
The maximum length of the POI name is 60 characters. The same applies to the additional information string and the phone number string.
The POI data of each destination address need to be entered in a single separate line, see image above.

Storing the text files on a USB drive
The text files with POI data need to be stored in a folder named myPOIs that is located in the root directory of the USB drive.
Example: F:\myPOIs\Home & Living_8.poi, where F:\ is the root directory of the USB drive.

After importing the individual POI data to the Infotainment system (see import description further below), the Imported POIs menu will show a list of selectable POI categories like the following:

Organizing the POI data in several subfolders
Optionally you can organize the text files in several, arbitrary named, subfolders.
Examples: F:\myPOIs\AnnsPOIs or F:\myPOIs\MyJourney, where F:\ is the root directory of the USB drive.

After importing individual POI data organized in that way to the Infotainment system (see import description further below), the Imported POIs menu will show a list of selectable submenus like the following:
After selecting a submenu, the related list of imported POI categories will be displayed.

**Importing the POI data to the Infotainment system**

Connect the USB drive with your individual POI data to the USB port of the Infotainment system, see chapter "USB port" on page 146.

To start the import: press the **CONFIG** button, select **Navigation settings**, select **Import individual POIs** and then select **Continue**.

All POI data stored on the USB drive is imported to the myPOIs memory of the Infotainment system.

After the import is finished, the imported POIs are selectable as destinations via the **Enter destination** menu, see chapter "Destination input" below.

**Destination input**

Press the **DEST** button to open a menu with various options for entering or selecting a destination.

- **Home**: selection of the currently set home address (if available). Setting/changing the home address, see "Setting the home address" below.

  After selecting the home address, the Infotainment system immediately calculates a route from the current position to the home address and then starts route guidance.

- **Enter address**: direct entry of a destination address with country, city, street and house number. See "Entering an address directly" below.

- **Address book**: selection of a destination address stored in the address book. See "Selecting an address from the address book" below.

See also "Storing an address in the address book or myPOIs memory" and "Editing or deleting a stored address" below.

- **Last destinations**: selection from a list of recently selected destinations. See "Selecting a previous destination" below.

- **myPOIs**: selection of a destination address stored in the myPOIs memory. See "Selecting an
address stored in the myPOIs memory" below.
See also "Storing an address in the address book or myPOIs memory" and "Editing or deleting a stored address" below.

■ Points of Interest: selection of POIs (addresses of, e.g., restaurants, petrol stations, hospitals etc.) stored on the map SD card of the Infotainment system. See "Selecting a point of interest" below.

■ Select from map: selection of a destination from the map display using the eight-way switch 109. See "Selecting a destination from the map" below.

■ Latitude / Longitude: selection of a destination using geographic coordinates. See "Selecting a destination via geographic coordinates" below.

Selecting a petrol station as destination after a Fuel level low alert
When the fuel level in the vehicle's tank is low, an alert message is displayed.

Below the list detailed information on the currently marked petrol station is displayed: the approximate direction to the petrol station, the address, the distance and the available fuel types (in addition to petrol and Diesel). Abbreviations used for fuel types: CNG (Compressed natural gas), LPG (Liquefied petroleum gas).

Starting route guidance to a petrol station
Select the desired petrol station. The Navigation menu is displayed. Select Start navigation to start route guidance to the displayed address.
Description on route guidance, see chapter "Guidance" 179.

**Entering an address directly**
Press the DEST button and then select **Enter address** to open the menu shown below.

To change/select the country: mark the country input field (see image above) and then press the **MENU** knob to open the **Countries** menu.

Select the desired country.

**Entering an address using the speller function**
Mark the **City:** input field and then press the **MENU** knob to activate the speller function.

Using the **MENU** knob, successively mark and accept the letters for the desired city. During this process the system will automatically block letters that cannot occur next in the city name.

The following symbols can be selected in the bottom line:

⇧ : Lists with special letters are displayed in the bottom line.
◀▶ : Previous/next letter is marked.
 extrad: Delete last letter.
Aa : Upper, lower case.
List function - once two letters have been entered (in some cases just one letter), all names available with these letters are displayed. The more letters are entered, the shorter becomes the list.

**OK**: Complete entry or accept search term.

By a long press on the BACK button all letters entered are deleted at once from the input line.

Repeat the process for the remaining input fields (entering a house number or junction is optional).

---

# Navigation menu

After completing the address, select **OK**.

The **Navigation** menu is displayed.

### Starting route guidance

Select **Start navigation** to start route guidance to the displayed address.

Description on route guidance, see chapter "Guidance" 179.

### Storing the address

Select **Store** if you want to store the displayed address in the address book or myPOI's memory.

The **Store** menu is displayed, see "Storing an address in the address book or myPOI's memory" below.

### Selecting an address from the address book

Press the **DEST** button and then select **Address book**.

Select the desired address book entry.

The **Navigation** menu is displayed.

### Starting route guidance

Select **Start navigation** to start route guidance to the displayed address.

Description on route guidance, see chapter "Guidance" 179.

### Selecting a previous destination

Press the **DEST** button and then select **Last destinations** to open the menu shown below.
A list of the most recently used destination addresses is displayed. Select the desired destination. The Navigation menu is displayed.

Starting route guidance
Select Start navigation to start route guidance to the displayed address. Description on route guidance, see chapter "Guidance" 179.

Storing the address
Select Store if you want to store the displayed address in the address book or myPOIs memory.

The Store menu is displayed, see "Storing an address in the address book or myPOIs memory" below.

Selecting an address stored in the myPOIs memory
Press the DEST button and then select myPOIs to open the menu shown below.

Note
The option Imported POIs is only selectable if points of interest (address) data were downloaded from a USB drive, see "Exporting and importing POI data" in section "Usage" above.

Select the desired option. A menu with various sorting options is displayed.

The sorting options determine in which order the addresses of the individual/imported points of interest will be displayed later. Select the desired sorting option. A menu with the currently available points of interest categories is displayed.
Select the desired category. A menu with a list of all available points of interest of the selected category (e.g. Restaurant) is displayed.

**Note**
Points of interest which are far away from the vehicle's current position may not be displayed in the list.

Below the list detailed information on the currently marked point of interest is displayed: the approximate direction to the point of interest, the address and the distance.

**Starting route guidance to a point of interest**
Select the desired point of interest. The Navigation menu is displayed. Select Start navigation to start route guidance to the displayed address. Description on route guidance, see chapter "Guidance" 179.

**Selecting a point of interest**
Press the DEST button and then select **Points of Interest**.
A menu with various options for the selection of points of interest (e.g. restaurants, petrol stations, hospitals etc.) is displayed.

**Vicinity current position**
Selection of points of interest close to the vehicle's current position.
After selecting the option, a list of all available points of interest categories is displayed.
For example, you are looking for a petrol station:
Select **Automotive & Petrol Stations**. A menu is displayed that provides options for further refinement of the petrol station search.

After selecting **Start search**, a search for all petrol stations in the area is started. The search takes into account all petrol stations that meet the currently set filter criteria for **Brand or chain name** and **Fueltype** (changing the filter criteria, see "Setting filters for search refinement" below).

After the search is finished, a list of all found petrol stations is displayed.

Below the list detailed information on the currently marked petrol station is displayed: the approximate direction to the petrol station, the address, the distance and the available fuel types (in addition to petrol and Diesel).

**Abbreviations used for fuel types:**
- **CNG** (Compressed natural gas)
- **LPG** (Liquefied petroleum gas)

**Setting filters for search refinement**
After selecting **Brand or chain name**, a list is displayed with all available petrol station brands/chains in the area.

The number of petrol stations can be reduced by marking at least one petrol station brand/chain.

After marking the desired brands/chains: select **Start search with selected filters** or, for further refinement of the search, select **Continue with next filter** (fuel types).

After selecting **Fueltype**, a list is displayed with all fuel types available (in addition to petrol and Diesel) at petrol stations in the area.

The number of petrol stations can be reduced by marking at least one fuel type.
After marking the desired fuel types: select **Start search with selected filters** or, for further refinement of the search, select **Continue with next filter** (petrol station brands/chains).
After starting a search, a list of all petrol stations that meet the previously selected filter criteria is displayed.

Select the desired petrol station.
The **Navigation** menu is displayed.

**Starting route guidance**
Select **Start navigation** to start route guidance to the displayed address.
Description on route guidance, see chapter "Guidance" 179.

**Storing the address**
Select **Store** if you want to store the displayed address in the address book or myPOIs memory.
The **Store** menu is displayed, see "Storing an address in the address book or myPOIs memory" below.

**Along freeway**
Selection of motorway related points of interest (e.g. petrol stations or service areas) along the route. Only available when you are currently driving on a motorway.
Selecting a point of interest: see example above for "Vicinity current position".

**Around destination**
Selection of points of interest close to the destination entered.
Selecting a point of interest: see example above for "Vicinity current position".

**Around other cities**
Selection of points of interest around any city.
After selecting the option, a country list is displayed.
Select the desired country. A menu for entering a city name is displayed.
Selecting a point of interest: see example above for "Vicinity current position".

Enter the desired city using the speller function, see "Entering an address using the speller function" above.
Once the entry is specific enough, a list with possible cities is displayed. Sometimes it may be necessary to select  for displaying the list.
Select the desired city. A menu appears on which the points of interest close to the selected city are listed by category.
Selecting a point of interest: see example above for "Vicinity current position".
Search by name
Selection of points of interest by entering a name.
After selecting the option, a country list is displayed.
Select the desired country. A menu for name input is displayed.

Enter the name of the desired point of interest using the speller function, see "Entering an address using the speller function" above.

Once the entry is specific enough, a list with possible points of interest is displayed. Sometimes it may be necessary to select ▼ for displaying the list.
Select the desired point of interest. The Navigation menu is displayed.

Starting route guidance
Select Start navigation to start route guidance to the displayed address.

Description on route guidance, see chapter "Guidance" 179.

Storing the address
Select Store if you want to store the displayed address in the address book or myPOIs memory.
The Store menu is displayed, see "Storing an address in the address book or myPOIs memory" below.

Search by phone number
Selection of points of interest by entering a telephone number.
After selecting the option, a country list is displayed.
Select the desired country. A menu for number input is displayed.

Enter the desired telephone number using the speller function, see "Entering an address using the speller function" above.
Once the entry is specific enough a list with possible telephone numbers (each number representing a point of interest) is displayed. Sometimes it may be necessary to select ▼ for displaying the list.
Select the desired point of interest. The Navigation menu is displayed.

Starting route guidance
Select Start navigation to start route guidance to the displayed address.
Description on route guidance, see chapter "Guidance" 179.

Storing the address
Select Store if you want to store the displayed address in the address book or myPOIs memory.
The Store menu is displayed, see "Storing an address in the address book or myPOIs memory" below.

Selecting a destination from the map
Press the DEST button and then select Select from map.
A menu with a map showing the area around the current location is displayed.

Note
The map scale can be changed by turning the MENU knob.
Using the eight-way switch on the MENU knob 109 position the crosswire on a destination on the map.
Press the MENU knob to confirm the selection.
The Navigation menu is displayed.

Starting route guidance
Select Start navigation to start route guidance to the displayed address.

Description on route guidance, see chapter "Guidance" 179.

Storing the address
Select Store if you want to store the displayed address in the address book or myPOIs memory.
The Store menu is displayed, see "Storing an address in the address book or myPOIs memory" below.

Selecting a destination via geographic coordinates
Press the DEST button and then select Latitude / Longitude.
A menu that allows the input of geographic coordinates as destination address is displayed.
Entering the Latitude coordinate  
1. Select Latitude.  
2. Turn the MENU knob to select N or S (north or south of the equator).  
3. Press the MENU knob to confirm the selection.  
4. Turn the MENU knob to enter the desired degrees of latitude.  
5. Press the MENU knob to confirm the entry.  
6. Enter the desired values for the latitude minutes and seconds.

Entering the Longitude coordinate  
1. Select Longitude.  
2. Turn the MENU knob to select W or E (west or east of the prime meridian in Greenwich).  
3. Press the MENU knob to confirm the entry.  
4. Enter and confirm the desired values for the longitude degrees, minutes and seconds.  
Select Apply to confirm the displayed coordinates.

The Navigation menu is displayed.

Starting route guidance  
Select Start navigation to start route guidance to the displayed address.  
Description on route guidance, see chapter "Guidance"  179.

Storing the address  
Select Store if you want to store the displayed address in the address book or myPOIs memory.  
The Store menu is displayed, see "Storing an address in the address book or myPOIs memory" below.

Storing an address in the address book or myPOIs memory  
The Infotainment system provides two separate memory areas where you can store your favourite destination addresses: the address book and the myPOIs memory.

Before storing an address in one of these memory areas, you need to assign the address to a category:

- If you want to store an address in the address book, you need to assign the address to the categories Private or Business.
- If you want to store an address in the myPOIs memory, you can choose from 18 categories (e.g. Restaurant, Travel or Culture).

Storing an address in the address book  
Press the DEST button to open the Enter destination menu, and then select an option for the input or selection of a destination address (e.g. Enter address or Last...
destinations), see regarding descriptions on address input or selection above.

After entering or selecting the desired destination address, the Navigation menu is displayed.

Select Store.

The menu Store is displayed, with the previously entered or selected destination address as default name.

The default name can be changed (see example in the image below) using the speller function, see "Entering an address using the speller function" above.

A telephone number can be entered optionally.

The default category Private can be changed to Business:

Select the displayed category to open a menu with a list of all available address categories.

Select OK to store the destination address in the address book using the displayed name and category.

A maximum of 100 destination addresses can be stored in the address book.

Storing an address in the myPOIs memory

Storing a destination address in the myPOIs memory functions the same as described above for the address book.

The only difference: select a category different from Private or Business, e.g. Restaurant, Automotive or Shopping.

Note

If you select one of the categories Private or Business, the destination address will be stored in the myPOIs memory not in the address book.

Select Business.

The menu Store is displayed again.

Note

If you select another category than Private or Business, the destination address will be stored in the myPOIs memory not in the address book.
Editing or deleting a stored address
Address data (including the category and telephone number) stored in the address book or myPOIs memory can be edited or entirely deleted at any time.

Editing or deleting an address book entry
Press the DEST button, select Address book, select the desired address entry and then select Edit. The Edit menu is displayed.

The following options are available:
- **Address**: opens the Enter address menu. You can edit the displayed address using the speller function, see "Entering an address using the speller function" above.
  
  After confirming the edited address, the Navigation menu is displayed again.
  
  If you want to edit also the name or change the category, you need to select the regarding address in the address book again, see above.

- **Name & Number**: after selecting this option, you can edit the name of the address book entry, edit the telephone number or select a new category, see "Storing an address in the address book" above.

- **Delete**: deletes the displayed address from the address book.

- **Set as Home**: sets the displayed address as home address, see "Setting the home address" below.

Editing or deleting a myPOIs entry
Press the DEST button and then select myPOIs to open the menu shown below.

Editing or deleting Individual POIs
Select Individual POIs, select the desired sorting option (e.g. Vicinity current position), select the desired category (e.g. Restaurant), select the desired address and then select Edit. The Edit menu is displayed.

Editing or deleting the displayed myPOIs entry functions the same as described for an address book entry, see above.
Notes on Imported POIs
Imported points of interest (POIs downloaded from a USB drive) cannot be edited directly.

If you want to edit the address data of an imported POI:

■ You first need to store the address in the address book or as an individual point of interest. Then you can edit the address data of the regarding address book entry or myPOIs entry (selectable via Individual POIs).

■ Or you can import updated address data from a USB drive, see "Exporting and importing POI data" in chapter "Usage" above.

It is also not possible to directly remove the address data of individual imported points of interest from the myPOIs memory.

If you want to remove individual imported POIs:
Import updated POI data to the Infotainment system that do not contain the address data of the POIs which you want to be removed.

To remove all imported POIs of a certain category: import an empty POI data file of the regarding category. Descriptions on importing POI data, see "Exporting and importing POI data" in chapter "Usage" above.

Deleting all imported POIs at once:
Press the CONFIG button, select Navigation settings and then select Delete all imported POIs.

Setting the home address
Before you can set an address as home address, you need to store this address in the address book or myPOIs memory, see corresponding descriptions above.

Setting an address book entry as home address
Press the DEST button, select Address book, select the desired address entry, select Edit and then select Set as Home.
The displayed address is set as new home address and displayed as first option in the Enter destination menu.

Setting a myPOIs entry as home address
Press the DEST button and then select myPOIs to open the menu shown below.

Setting an individual POI as home address
Select Individual POIs, select the desired sorting option (e.g. Vicinity current position), select the desired category (e.g. Restaurant), select the desired address, select Edit and then select Set as Home.
The displayed address is set as new home address and displayed as first option in the Enter destination menu.
Notes on Imported POIs
Imported points of interest (POIs downloaded from a USB drive) cannot be set as home address directly.

If you want to set the address of an imported POI as home address:

You first need to store the address in the address book or as an individual point of interest.

Then you can set the address data of the regarding address book entry or myPOIs entry (selectable via Individual POIs) as home address.

Guidance
Press the NAV button and then the MENU knob to display the navigation main menu.

Depending on whether the route guidance is currently inactive or active, different menu options are available.

Functions with route guidance inactive

Start navigation
After selecting Start navigation the menu shown below is displayed.

The following options are available:

- **Start navigation**: start route guidance to the displayed address.
- **Show on map**: show the location of the displayed address on the map.
- **Call**: not available.
- **Store**: store the displayed address in the address book or myPOIs memory, see "Storing an address in the address book or myPOIs memory" in chapter "Destination input" above.
- **Edit**: change/edit the displayed address, see "Editing or deleting a stored address" in chapter "Destination input" above.

- **Route criteria**: set/change criteria for route calculation, see "Navigation options" below.

**TMC messages**
Information on TMC, see chapter "Dynamic guidance" 155.

Select **TMC messages** to display a list of all TMC traffic messages that are currently received.

Select a TMC traffic message to display detailed information on the related traffic issue.

**Navigation options**
The corresponding menu provides options and a multitude of relating submenus for route guidance configuration.

**Route criteria**
The calculation of the route can be controlled by various criteria.
Select one of the following criteria:
- **Fastest**
- **Shortest**
- **Economical**: an energy-optimized route is calculated, taking into account the vehicle-specific parameters that are currently set in the **Vehicle parameters** menu, see below.

Select **Vehicle parameters** to open a menu for the selection of vehicle-specific parameters.
The selected settings will be taken into account for route calculation, if Economic is currently selected, see above.

After setting the desired vehicle parameters, press the BACK button to leave the menu.

Select Dynamic guidance to open a menu for the configuration of dynamic route guidance.

Information on dynamic route guidance, see chapter "Dynamic guidance" 186.

Select Dynamic guidance to activate/deactivate dynamic route guidance.

If dynamic route guidance is activated:
Select Automatic recalculation if you want the route be recalculated automatically when there are traffic problems.
Select Recalculation after confirmation if you want the route be recalculated only after confirming the corresponding message.

Select Apply settings to activate the displayed settings and to leave the menu.

If desired select one or several of the following options in the Route criteria menu:
- Avoid freeways
- Avoid toll roads
- Avoid tunnels
- Avoid ferries
- Consider time restricted roads

Display route guidance
The following options are available for the display of route guidance:
Using the Highway lane guidance option, you can determine which type of illustration should be displayed when reaching a highway intersection.

If Highway lane guidance is deactivated the following type of illustration will be displayed:

If Highway lane guidance is activated the following type of illustration will be displayed:

Using the Popup information option, you can select whether route guidance information from the navigation should be displayed in popup windows in other operating modes (e.g. radio). The information is hidden after a set time or by pressing the BACK button.

Select Apply settings to activate the displayed settings and to return to the Navigation options menu.

Map options
Select Map options and then Map mode to display the following submenu:
Select between map orientation north up and head up on the map display. Select Map options and then Show POIs on map to open a submenu with various options to define whether and which points of interest should be displayed on the map.

When User defined is selected the type of points of interest can be defined that should be displayed, e.g. restaurant, hotel, public places, etc.

Display of arrival time or driving time
After selecting the option Indication estimated driving time or Indication estimated arrival time in the menu Navigation options, the corresponding time is shown in the top line on the route guidance screen.

Current position information
The following information on the current position is displayed:
- City
- Street name
- Latitude
- Longitude
- Map display

The current position can be copied to the address book or myPOIs memory using Store, see "Storing an address in the address book or myPOIs memory" in chapter "Destination input" above.

Destination information
Displayed information: same as on the display for Current position.

Functions for active route guidance

Stop navigation
After selecting Stop navigation, the route guidance is deactivated and the menu options for route guidance inactive are displayed, see "Functions with route guidance inactive" above.

TMC messages
Information on TMC, see chapter "Dynamic guidance" 155.

After selecting TMC messages the Filtering menu is displayed.
Select whether All traffic messages or only Traffic messages along route should be displayed in the TMC messages list, see below.

Navigation options
Description, see "Functions with route guidance inactive" above.

Route information
The following information can be accessed on the Route information menu:

- Route list
- Current position information

Route list
All streets on the calculated route are listed with the related distances. Route list items marked with a "+" symbol can be expanded by selecting the related list item. After selection, further details on the related list item are displayed.

Current position information
Description, see "Functions with route guidance inactive" above.

Destination information
Description, see "Functions with route guidance inactive" above.

Overview current route
The following information on the current route is displayed:

- Position
- Destination
- Arrival time
- Distance
- Map display
Route blocking

The following options are available to manually exclude certain areas/route sections from the route guidance:

Route list

In the list of street names on the currently calculated route, streets can be excluded from the route guidance.

To exclude a street from the route guidance:

Mark the regarding street name and press the MENU knob. The street name is displayed crossed-out.

If desired, exclude further streets from the route guidance.

Select Apply settings and confirm the displayed message.

The route is re-calculated, taking into account the excluded streets.

By distance

By setting a distance the section of route from the current position to the set distance can be excluded from the route guidance.

Set the desired distance, press the MENU knob and then confirm the displayed message.

The route is re-calculated taking into account the excluded route section.

Note

The route blocking entered remains active until a new route calculation is performed.
Remove all route blockages
After selecting this option, all areas/route sections previously selected as to be excluded from the route guidance will be taken into account again for route guidance.

Dynamic guidance
If dynamic route guidance is active, the entire current traffic situation that the Infotainment system receives via TMC is included in the calculation of the route. The route is suggested taking into account all traffic problems or restrictions as per pre-set criteria (e.g. „shortest route“, „avoid freeways“ etc.).
In the case of a traffic problem (e.g. traffic jam, closed road) on the route driven, a message is displayed and a voice message output indicating the nature of the problem. The driver can decide whether to drive around the traffic problem taking the suggested change to the route or to carry on through the traffic problem.

Nearby traffic problems are also reported if route guidance is not active.
If route guidance is active, the system continuously checks, based on the traffic information, whether it would be better to recalculate the route or take an alternative route taking into account the current traffic situation.
The activation and deactivation of dynamic route guidance, as well as criteria for the calculation of the route and other settings for navigation, are made in the Navigation options menu, see chapter "Guidance" 179.

Dynamic route guidance only works if traffic information is received via the RDS-TMC traffic information system.
The possible delay due to a traffic problem calculated by the Infotainment system is based on data that the system receives via the RDS-TMC station currently set. The actual delay may be different to that calculated.

Maps
All map data required for use of the navigation system is stored on an SD card provided with the Infotainment system.

Map SD card
The SD card reader of the Infotainment system can only read the SD card provided specifically for use with the vehicle's navigation system. The SD card reader cannot read any other SD cards.
Due to production date of the map data on the SD card, some new roads may not be included, or some names
and roads may differ from those in use at the time the map data was produced.

To order additional SD cards or an update of the map data, contact your Chevrolet Service Partner.

Replacing a map SD card, see below.

Important information on SD card handling

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Caution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Never attempt to use an SD card that has been cracked, deformed or repaired using adhesive tape. Doing so may damage the equipment.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Handle the SD card with care. Never touch the metal contacts.
- Do not use any conventional cleaner, benzine, thinner, or antistatic spray.
- If you need to clean the SD card, use a soft cloth.

- Do not bend the SD card. Do not use any SD card that is bent or cracked.
- Do not put any sticker or write anything on either surface.
- Do not store the SD card in locations exposed to direct sunlight, or in high temperatures or humidity.
- Always place the SD card in its storage case, when not in use.

Replacing a map SD card
The SD card slot is located under the cover on the centre console.

Removing the SD card
Press on the inserted SD card to unlock it, and then carefully pull the SD card out of the SD card slot.
Inserting the SD card

Push the SD card with the cut-out edge on the left side (see image above) carefully into the SD card slot until the card engages.

**Note**
The SD card and SD card slot must always be kept clean and dry.
### Symbols overview

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>![Symbol 1]</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>![Symbol 2]</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>![Symbol 3]</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>![Symbol 4]</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>![Symbol 5]</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>![Symbol 6]</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>![Symbol 7]</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>![Symbol 8]</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>![Symbol 9]</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>![Symbol 10]</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>![Symbol 11]</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>![Symbol 12]</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>![Symbol 13]</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>![Symbol 14]</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>![Symbol 15]</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>![Symbol 16]</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>![Symbol 17]</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>![Symbol 18]</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>![Symbol 19]</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>![Symbol 20]</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>![Symbol 21]</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>![Symbol 22]</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>![Symbol 23]</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>![Symbol 24]</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>![Symbol 25]</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>![Symbol 26]</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>![Symbol 27]</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>![Symbol 28]</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>![Symbol 29]</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>![Symbol 30]</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>![Symbol 31]</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>![Symbol 32]</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No.</td>
<td>Explanation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----</td>
<td>----------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Current position (map)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Destination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Current position (route list)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>not available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>not available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Fog</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Road works</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Slippery road</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>Smog</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Snow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>Storm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>Caution/warning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>Closed road</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>Dense traffic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>Traffic jam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>Narrow lanes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>Open list</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----</td>
<td>----</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35</td>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36</td>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Speech recognition

#### General information

The speech recognition of the Infotainment system enables you to operate various functions of the navigation system (only Navi 900; inclusive audio system features) and the phone portal via voice input. It recognises commands and numeric sequences independently of the relevant speaker. The commands and numeric sequences can be spoken without a voice pause between the individual words.

You can save destination addresses, radio stations and telephone numbers assigning a name of your choice (voice tag). Using these names, you can later set the destination address for an upcoming trip, select a radio station or set up a telephone connection.

In the event of incorrect operation or commands the speech recognition gives you visual and/or acoustic feedback and requests you to re-enter the desired command. Apart

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>33</td>
<td>Chemist</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>Petrol station</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34</td>
<td>Cinema</td>
<td>47</td>
<td>Service area</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35</td>
<td>Airport</td>
<td>48</td>
<td>Restaurant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36</td>
<td>Amusement park</td>
<td>49</td>
<td>WC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37</td>
<td>City</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>Historical monument</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38</td>
<td>Bank</td>
<td>51</td>
<td>Hospital</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39</td>
<td>Traffic message</td>
<td>52</td>
<td>Emergency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>Ferry</td>
<td>53</td>
<td>Police</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41</td>
<td>Border</td>
<td>54</td>
<td>Harbour</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42</td>
<td>Tunnel</td>
<td>55</td>
<td>Mountain pass</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43</td>
<td>Kiosk</td>
<td>56</td>
<td>Public place</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44</td>
<td>Grocery</td>
<td>57</td>
<td>Related to the car</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45</td>
<td>Hotel/motel</td>
<td>58</td>
<td>Garage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46</td>
<td>Motorway exit</td>
<td>59</td>
<td>Cemetery</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
from this, the speech recognition acknowledges important commands and will enquire if necessary.

To ensure that conversations inside the vehicle do not lead to unintentional triggering of system functions, the speech recognition does not start until it has been activated.

**Important notes on language support**

- Not all languages available for the display of the Infotainment system are also available for the speech recognition.
- Not all languages available for the speech recognition of the phone portal are also available for the speech recognition of the navigation system (including audio system features).
- Speech recognition of the phone portal: if the currently selected language for the display is not supported by the speech recognition, you need to enter the voice commands in English.

To be able to enter voice commands in English, you first need to activate the phone main menu by pressing the PHONE button on the Infotainment system, and then activate the speech recognition of the phone portal by pressing the button \( \mathcal{E} \) on the steering wheel.

- Speech recognition of the navigation system: if the currently selected language for the display is not supported by the speech recognition, speech recognition will not be available.

In such a case you need to select another language for the display if you want to control the Infotainment system via voice commands:

Press the CONFIG button, select the Languages menu item and then select, e.g., English.

As the English language is one of the languages supported by the speech recognition of the navigation system, speech recognition will then be available.

**Note**

If you change the language shown on the Infotainment system's display, all names currently assigned to preset stations and/or destination addresses will be deleted.

**Phone control**

**Activating speech recognition**

To activate the speech recognition of the Phone portal, press the button \( \mathcal{E} \) on the steering wheel. For the duration of the dialogue any active audio source is muted and any traffic news fade-in is cancelled.

**Adjusting the volume for voice output**

Turn the volume knob on the Infotainment system, or press the + or – button on the steering wheel.
Cancelling a dialogue
There are various possibilities of deactivating the speech recognition and cancelling the dialogue:
- Press the button 📧 on the steering wheel.
- Say "Cancel".
- Do not enter (say) any commands for some time.
- After the third unrecognised command.

Operation
With the aid of the speech recognition the mobile phone can be operated very conveniently via voice input. It is sufficient to activate the speech recognition and to enter (say) the desired command. After input of the command the Infotainment system guides you through the dialogue with appropriate questions and feedback to achieve the desired action.

Main commands
After activation of the speech recognition a short tone signals that the speech recognition is expecting input.

Main commands available:
- "Dial"
- "Call"
- "Redialing"
- "Save"
- "Delete"
- "Directory"
- "Pair"
- "Select device"
- "Voice feedback"

Commands that are frequently available
- "Help": the dialogue is terminated and all commands available within the actual function are enumerated.
- "Cancel": the speech recognition is deactivated.
- "Yes": a suitable action is triggered depending on the context.
- "No": a suitable action is triggered depending on the context.

Entering a telephone number
After the command "Dial" the speech recognition requests input of a number.

The telephone number must be spoken in your normal voice without any artificial pauses between the individual numbers.

Recognition works best, if a pause of at least half a second is made after every three to five digits. The Infotainment system then repeats the numbers recognised.

You can then enter further numbers or the following commands:
- "Dial": the inputs are accepted.
- "Delete": the number last entered or the block of numbers last entered is deleted.
- "Plus": a preceding "+" is entered for a call abroad.
- "Verify": the inputs are repeated by the voice output.
- "Asterisk": An asterisk "*" is entered.
- "Hash": A hash "#" is entered.
- "Help"
- "Cancel"

The maximum length of the telephone number entered is 25 digits.

To be able to make a call abroad you can say the word "Plus" (+) at the beginning of your number. The plus allows you to call from any country without knowing the prefix for calls made abroad in that country. Then say the required country code.

**Example of a dialogue**
User: "Dial"
Voice output: "Please, say the number to dial"
User: "Plus Four Nine"
Voice output: "Plus Four Nine"
User: "Seven Three One"
Voice output: "Seven Three One"
User: "One One Nine Nine"

**Voice output:** "One One Nine Nine"
User: "Dial"
Voice output: "The number is being dialled"

**Entering a name**
Using the "Call" command a telephone number is entered that has been stored in the telephone book under a name (voice tag).

**Commands available:**
- "Yes"
- "No"
- "Help"
- "Cancel"

**Example of a dialogue**
User: "Call"
Voice output: "Please, say the nametag to call"
User: <Name>
Voice output: "Do you want to call <Michael>?"
User: "Yes"
Voice output: "The number is being dialled"

**Starting a second call**
A second call can be started during an active telephone call. To do so, press the button ».

**Commands available:**
- "Send": activate manual DTMF (touch-tone dialling), e.g. for voice mail or telephone banking.
- "Send nametag": activate DTMF (touch-tone dialling) by entering a name (voice tag).
- "Dial"
- "Call"
- "Redialing"
- "Help"
- "Cancel"

**Example of a dialogue**
User: <if a telephone call is active: press the button>
User: "Send"
Voice output: "Please, say the number to send."
(for number input see the dialogue example for Entering a telephone number)
User: "Send"

**Redialing**
The number last dialled is redialled with the command "Redialing".

**Saving**
With the command "Save" a telephone number is stored in the telephone book under a name (voice tag).

The name entered must be repeated once. The pitch and pronunciation must be as identical as possible for both name inputs, otherwise the speech recognition will reject the inputs.

A maximum of 50 voice tags can be stored in the telephone book.

Voice tags are speaker-dependent, i.e. only the person who recorded a voice tag can open it.

To avoid the start of the recording of a saved name from being cut off, a short pause should be left after an input request.

To be able to use the voice tag independently of the location, i.e. including other countries, all telephone numbers should be entered with a "plus" character and a country code.

Commands available:
- "Save": the inputs are accepted.
- "Verify": the last input is repeated.
- "Help"
- "Cancel"

**Example of a dialogue**
User: "Save"
Voice output: "Please, say the number to save"
(for number input see the dialogue example for Entering a telephone number)
User: "Save"
Voice output: "Please, say the nametag to save"
User: <Name>
Voice output: "Please, repeat the nametag to confirm"
Voice output: "Saving the nametag"

**Deleting**
A previously saved voice tag is deleted with the command "Delete".

Commands available:
- "Yes"
- "No"
- "Help"
- "Cancel"

**Listening to stored names**
The voice output of all stored names (voice tags) is started with the command "Directory".

Commands available during voice output of the voice tags:
- "Call": the telephone number of the voice tag last read aloud is selected.
- "Delete": the entry of the voice tag last read aloud is deleted.
Saving a mobile phone to or deleting it from the device list
With the command "Pair" a mobile phone can be saved to or deleted from the device list of the Phone portal 3199.

Commands available:
- "Add"
- "Delete"
- "Help"
- "Cancel"

Example of a dialogue
User: "Pair"
Voice output: "Do you want to add or delete a device?"
User: "Add"
Voice output: "Using the pair function in the external device, enter <1234> to pair."
Voice output: "Do you want to pair the device?"
User: "Yes"
Voice output: "The device is connected as the number <device_number>"

Selecting a mobile phone from the device list
Using the "Select device" command, a mobile phone can be selected in the device list for setting up a Bluetooth connection.

Example of a dialogue
User: "Select device"
Voice output: "Please, say a device number to select"
User: <device_number>
Voice output: "Do you want to select the device number <device_number>?"
User: "Yes"
Voice output: "Do you want to pair the device?"
User: "Yes"
Voice output: "One moment. The system searches for the selected device"
Voice output: "Device number <dev_num> is selected"

Voice feedback
Each voice input is answered or commented on by the Infotainment system by way of a voice output that is adapted to the situation.
To switch the voice output on or off, enter "Voice feedback" or press the button ▼.
Phone

General information
The Phone system (if fitted) provides you with the possibility of having mobile phone conversations via a vehicle microphone and the vehicle loudspeakers as well as operating the most important mobile phone functions via the Infotainment system in the vehicle. To be able to use the Phone system, the mobile phone has to be connected with it via Bluetooth.

The Phone system can be operated optionally via the speech recognition system.

Not all Phone system functions are supported by every mobile phone. The possible phone functions depend on the relevant mobile phone and network provider. You will find further information on this in the operating instructions for your mobile phone or you can enquire about them with your network provider.

Important information for operation and traffic safety

⚠️ Warning

Mobile phones have effects on your environment. For this reason safety regulations and directions have been prepared. You should be familiar with the related directions before you use the telephone function.

⚠️ Warning

Use of the hands-free facility while driving can be dangerous because your concentration is reduced when telephoning. Park your vehicle before you use the hands-free facility. Follow the stipulations of the country in which you find yourself at present.

Do not forget to follow the special regulations that apply in specific areas and always switch off the mobile phone if the use of mobile phones is prohibited, if interference is caused by the mobile phone or if dangerous situations can occur.

Bluetooth

The Phone system supports Bluetooth Handsfree Profile V. 1.5 and is specified in accordance with the Bluetooth Special Interest Group (SIG).


Operating the speech recognition

Do not use the speech recognition in emergencies, because in stress situations your voice can change so much that it can no longer be recognised sufficiently to set up the desired connection quickly enough.

Control elements

The most important telephone specific control elements are as follows:
\button: opens the telephone main menu.
Controls on steering wheel:
\: take call, activate speech recognition.
\, \: end/reject call, deactivate speech recognition.
The Phone system can be operated optionally via speech recognition 
192.

Connection
The Phone system switches itself on and off via the ignition. When the ignition is turned off you can turn the Phone system on and off via the Infotainment system.
A connection can be set up between the mobile phone and the Phone system via Bluetooth. For this purpose your mobile phone must support Bluetooth.
To be able to set up a Bluetooth connection the Phone system must be switched on and Bluetooth must be activated.

For information on the Bluetooth function of your mobile phone please refer to the operating instructions for the mobile phone.

Bluetooth connection
Bluetooth is a radio standard for the wireless connection of, for example, a telephone with other devices. Information such as a telephone book, call lists, the network operator’s name and field strength can be transferred. The functionality can be restricted depending on the telephone type.
To be able to set up a Bluetooth connection with the Phone system, the Bluetooth function of the mobile phone has to be activated and the mobile phone has to be set to "visible"/"discoverable". For further information please refer to the operating instructions for the mobile phone.

Press the CONFIG button.
Select Phone settings and then Bluetooth.

Activating Bluetooth
If the Bluetooth function of the Phone system is deactivated: set Activation to On and confirm the subsequent message.

Device list
When a mobile phone is connected to the Phone system via Bluetooth for the first time, the mobile phone is stored in the device list.
A maximum of 5 mobile phones can be stored in the device list.

**Connecting a mobile phone for the first time**

When the mobile phone is added as a handsfree device the user can make or receive calls and use other functions via the Phone system. The range of functions available depends on the mobile phone. While it is connected with the Phone system the mobile phone can be operated as usual. Note that the mobile phone battery may discharge at a higher speed than usual due to the Bluetooth connection active along with normal operation of the mobile phone.

Select *Add device (Handsfree)*. The Bluetooth code to be entered into the mobile phone is displayed.

**Note**

Only 5 devices may be paired at one time to the system. If an additional device is to be paired, an existing device must first be deleted.

The Phone system can now be detected by other Bluetooth devices.

As soon as the mobile phone has detected the Phone system the Bluetooth code can be entered into the mobile phone.

As soon as the Phone system has detected the mobile phone, the connection set-up can be confirmed. The mobile phone is adopted in the device list and can be operated via the Phone system.

**Changing the Bluetooth code**

The first time a Bluetooth connection to the Phone system is set up, a default code is displayed. This default code can be changed at any time. For
security reasons a four-digit and randomly selected code must be used for pairing devices.

Select **Change Bluetooth code**. On the menu displayed, edit the actual Bluetooth code and accept the modified code using **OK**.

Connecting a mobile phone saved in the device list

Select the desired mobile phone and then select the option **Select** in the menu displayed.

As soon as the Phone system has detected the mobile phone, the connection setup can be confirmed. The mobile phone can be operated via the Phone system.

Note

If the device fails to connect, check to ensure the device lists the vehicle phone system. If it does not, delete the device from the device list and reconnect as a new device.

Removing mobile phone from device list

Select the desired mobile phone from the device list. In the menu displayed select **Delete** and confirm the subsequent message.

Adjusting the ring tone

To change the ring tone characteristic:

Press **CONFIG** button.

Select **Phone settings** and then **Ring tone**.

Select the desired option.

To change the ring tone volume:

While the phone rings turn the ◁ knob of the Infotainment system or press the buttons ◁ / - on the steering wheel.
Resetting the mobile phone to factory settings
Select Phone settings and then Restore factory settings.

Operation

Introduction
As soon as a connection via Bluetooth has been set up between your mobile phone and the Infotainment system, you can also operate many functions of your mobile phone via the Infotainment system.

Via the Infotainment system, you can, e.g., set up a connection to the telephone numbers stored in your mobile phone or change the telephone numbers.

Note
In the handsfree mode mobile phone operation continues to be possible, e.g. taking a call or adjusting the volume.

After setup of a connection between the mobile phone and the Infotainment system the mobile phone data is transmitted to the Infotainment system. This can take some time depending on the phone model. During this period operation of the mobile phone is possible via the Infotainment system only to a limited extent.

Not every telephone supports all functions of the Phone system. Therefore deviations from the range of functions described with these specific telephones are possible. For further information please refer to the instructions for the telephone specific adapter.

Setting the volume for hands-free facility
Turn the knob of the Infotainment system or press the buttons + / - on the steering wheel.

Dialling a telephone number

With the telephone main menu active, press the MENU knob to open the phone operation menu.
Several options for dialling telephone numbers, for using the phone book and call lists.
Entering a number manually

Select **Enter number** and then enter the desired number sequence.
Select **y** to start the dialling process.
You can switch to the telephone book menu by selecting **z**.

**Telephone book**

After setting up the connection the telephone book is compared with the telephone book in the temporary memory, provided that the same SIM card or same telephone is concerned. During this period any newly added entries are not displayed.

If the SIM card or telephone are different, the telephone book is reloaded. This process can take a few minutes depending on the phone model.

**Selecting a telephone number from the telephone book**

Select **Phone book**. In the displayed menu select the desired first letter range to start a preselection of the telephone book entries that you want to have displayed.

**Note**

Telephone book entries are carried over as they are transferred from the mobile phone. The presentation and order of the telephone book entries may be different on the Infotainment system's display and the mobile phone's display.

After having performed the preselection: select the desired entry in the telephone book to display the numbers saved under this entry.
Select the desired number to start the dialling process.
Call lists

Via the menu Call lists the user can view incoming, outgoing and missed calls and dial the relevant numbers. To start a dialling process: select the desired call list, an entry in the call list and finally the desired telephone number.

Incoming call
When there is an incoming call a menu is displayed to accept or decline the telephone call. Select required option.

Functions during a telephone call
If you currently have a telephone call, press the MENU knob to open a submenu.

Various options are available depending on the situation and range of functions of the mobile phone:
- **Hang up**: disconnect the telephone connection.
- **Call number**: enter a telephone number to make a second telephone call or perform DTMF (touch-tone dialling), e.g. for voice mail or telephone banking.
- **Detach call**: detach the connection to a conference participant in a telephone conference.
- **Merge calls**: merge two calls when there are several active calls.
- **Switch calls**: switch between calls, if there are several calls.
- **Mute call**: mute a call.

Mobile phones and CB radio equipment

Installation instructions and operating guidelines
The vehicle specific installation instructions and the operating guidelines of the mobile phone and handsfree manufacturer must be observed when installing and operating a mobile telephone. Failure to do so could invalidate the vehicle type approval (EU directive 95/54/EC).

Recommendations for fault-free operation:
- Professionally installed exterior antenna to obtain the maximum range possible,
- Maximum transmission power 10 Watts,
- Installation of the phone in a suitable spot, consider relevant Note ✎ 44.
Seek advice on predetermined installation points for the external antenna or equipment holder and ways of using devices with a transmission power exceeding 10 Watts.

Use of a handsfree attachment without external antenna with mobile telephone standards GSM 900/1800/1900 and UMTS is only permitted if the maximum transmission power of the mobile telephone is 2 Watts for GSM 900 or 1 Watt for the other types.

For reasons of safety, do not use the phone while driving. Even use of a handsfree set can be a distraction while driving.

⚠️ Warning

Operation of radio equipment and mobile telephones which fail to meet above mentioned mobile telephone standards is only permitted using an antenna located outside of the vehicle.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Caution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mobile telephones and radio equipment may lead to malfunctions in the vehicle electronics when operated inside the vehicle with no exterior antenna, unless the above mentioned regulations are observed.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Climate control systems

Heating and ventilation system

Controls for:
- Temperature
- Air distribution
- Fan speed
- Demisting, defrosting
- Heated rear window

Temperature
Adjust the temperature by turning the knob.

Air distribution
Select air outlet by pushing buttons.

Fan speed
Adjust the air flow by switching the fan to the desired speed.

red = warm
blue = cold

Heating will not be fully effective until the engine has reached its operating temperature.

The selected setting is indicated by a LED in the button.
Demisting and defrosting

- Push button \( \text{\large \textcircled{D}} \): fan automatically switches to higher speed, the air distribution is directed automatically to the windscreen,
- Set temperature control to warmest level.
- Switch on heated rear window \( \text{\large \textcircled{S}} \).
- Open side air vents as required and direct them towards the door windows.

Heated rear window \( \text{\large \textcircled{S}} \) 35.

Indication of settings
Selected functions are indicated by the LED of the activated button.

### Air conditioning system

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Danger</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Do not sleep in a vehicle with the air conditioning or heating system on. It may cause serious harm or death due to a drop in the oxygen level and/or body temperature.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Controls for:
- Temperature
- Air distribution
- Fan speed
- Demisting and defrosting
- Air recirculation
- Cooling
- Heated rear window

#### Temperature
Adjust the temperature by turning the knob.

red = warm
blue = cold

Heating will not be fully effective until the engine has reached its operating temperature.

#### Air distribution
Select air outlet by pushing buttons.

- \( \text{\large \textcircled{H}} \) = to head area and foot well
- \( \text{\large \textcircled{F}} \) = to foot well
- \( \text{\large \textcircled{V}} \) = to head area via adjustable air vents
- \( \text{\large \textcircled{W}} \) = to windscreen and foot well
Climate control

The selected setting is indicated by a LED in the button.

Fan speed
Adjust the air flow by switching the fan to the desired speed.

Demisting and defrosting the windows

- Push button : fan automatically switches to higher speed, the air distribution is directed automatically to the windscreen,
- Switch on cooling .

Set temperature control to warmest level.
- Switch on heated rear window .
- Open side air vents as required and direct them towards the door windows.

Note
If the settings for demisting and defrosting are selected, an Autostop will be inhibited.
If the settings for demisting and defrosting are selected while the engine is in an Autostop, the engine will restart automatically.

Heated rear window .

Air recirculation system
The air recirculation mode is operated with the button.

Warning
Driving with recirculation mode for prolonged period of time can make you sleepy. Periodically turn to the outside air mode for fresh air.

The exchange of fresh air is reduced in air recirculation mode. In operation without cooling the air humidity increases, so the windows may mist up. The quality of the passenger compartment air deteriorates, which may cause the vehicle occupants to feel drowsy.

Cooling
Operated with the button and is functional only when the engine and fan are running.
The air conditioning system cools and dehumidifies (dries) when outside temperature is slightly above the freezing point. Therefore condensation may form and drip from under the vehicle.
If no cooling or drying is required, switch the cooling system off to save fuel. When the cooling system is switched off, no engine restart will be requested by the climate control system during an Autostop.
Maximum cooling

Briefly open the windows so that hot air can disperse quickly.
- Switch on cooling 🌽.
- Switch on air circulation system 💧.
- Push air distribution switch ❄️.
- Set temperature control to coldest level.
- Set fan speed to highest level.
- Open all vents.

Indication of settings
Selected functions are indicated by the LED of the activated button.

Electronic climate control system

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>△ Danger</th>
<th>Do not sleep in a vehicle with the air conditioning or heating system on. It may cause serious harm or death due to a drop in the oxygen level and/or body temperature.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Controls for automatic mode:
AUTO = automatic mode, all settings except temperature are chosen automatically by the system

Temperature = preselection of the desired temperature

The following functions can be adapted manually, disabling automatic mode:

- Fan speed MODE = selectable air flow
- MODE = selectable air distribution
- 🌧️ = demisting and defrosting
- 🕒 = switching system on or off
- ☀️ = switching cooling on or off
- 💧 = air recirculation
- AQS = air quality sensor

Heated rear window 🔥 35.
Climate control

The preselected temperature is automatically regulated. In the automatic mode the fan speed and air distribution automatically regulate the air flow.

The system can be manually adapted by use of air distribution and fan speed controls.

Each change of settings is indicated in the Info-Display for a few seconds. Activated functions are indicated by the LED in the button. The electronic climate control system is only fully operational when the engine is running.

On vehicles equipped with a stop-start system, pressing the button of the climate control has the following effect:

- Pressing once (LED illuminates green): the air conditioning operates in ECO mode
- Pressing twice (LED illuminates yellow): the air conditioning operates in comfort mode (focussed on passenger comfort; the time of an Autostop may be reduced)
- Pressing three times: the air conditioning is turned off

After each press of the button, a message appears in the display confirming the setting.

**Automatic mode AUTO**

Basic setting for maximum comfort:

- Press AUTO button, the air conditioning is activated automatically.
- Open all air vents.
- Set pre-selected temperature using left rotary knob.

The fan speed regulation in automatic mode can be changed in the menu **Settings**.

Vehicle personalisation 90
All air vents are actuated automatically in automatic mode. The air vents should therefore always be open.

**Temperature preselection**

Set temperature to the desired value by turning the knob.
- red = warm
- blue = cold

If the minimum temperature is set, the climate control system runs at maximum cooling.

If the maximum temperature is set, the climate control system runs at maximum heating.

**Note**
If the temperature is reduced 2 °C or more while the engine is in an Autostop, the engine will restart automatically.

Stop-start system 219.

**Demisting and defrosting the windows**
- Press button.
- Temperature and air distribution are set automatically and the fan runs to higher speed.
- To return to automatic mode: press button.

**Note**
If the button is pressed while the engine is running, an Autostop will be inhibited until the button is pressed again.
If the button is pressed while the engine is in an Autostop, the engine will restart automatically.

**Heated rear window**

**Manual settings**
Climate control system settings can be changed by activating the buttons and rotary knobs as follows.
Changing a setting will deactivate the automatic mode.

**Fan speed**

Turn right rotary knob. The selected fan speed is indicated by the number in the display.
To return to automatic mode: Press AUTO button.
Air distribution MODE

Press MODE button once or repeatedly for desired adjustment, the setting of air distribution is indicated on the Info-Display.

Return to automatic air distribution: Deactive corresponding setting or press button AUTO.

Cooling
Activate or deactivate with the button.

The air conditioning system cools and dehumidifies (dries) when outside temperature is above a specific level. Therefore condensation may form and drip from under the vehicle.

If no cooling or drying is required, switch the cooling system off to save fuel. When the cooling system is switched off, no engine restart will be requested by the climate control system during an Autostop.

Manual air recirculation mode
The manual air recirculation mode is operated with the button.

Warning
The exchange of fresh air is reduced in air recirculation mode. In operation without cooling the air humidity increases, so the windows may mist up. The quality of the passenger compartment air deteriorates, which may cause the vehicle occupants to feel drowsy.

Air quality sensor AQS
The air quality sensor detects poor quality ambient and switches automatically to internal air.

System switching on or off
Pushing button switches all functions of heating, ventilation and cooling system on or off.
Basic settings
Some settings can be changed in the menu Settings in the Info-Display. Vehicle personalisation 90.

Auxiliary heater

Air heater (Diesel vehicle only)
Quickheat is an electric auxiliary air heater which warms up the passenger compartment more quickly.

Air vents

Adjustable air vents
At least one air vent must be open while cooling is on in order to prevent the evaporator from icing up due to lack of air movement.

To open vent, turn the adjuster wheel to ▼.

Direct the flow of air by tilting and swivelling the slats.
To close the vent, turn the adjuster wheel to 4.

⚠️ Warning
Do not attach any objects to the slats of the air vents. Risk of damage and injury in case of an accident.

Fixed air vents
Additional air vents are located beneath the windscreen and door windows and in the foot wells.

Maintenance

Air intake
The air intake in front of the windscreen in the engine compartment must be kept clear to allow air intake. Remove any leaves, dirt or snow.

Pollen filter

Manual controlled pollen filter
The filter cleans dust, soot, pollen, spore and smell (combi filter) from the air entering the vehicle through the air intake.

Air conditioning regular operation
In order to ensure continuously efficient performance, cooling must be operated for a few minutes once a month, irrespective of the weather and time of year. Operation with cooling is not possible when outside temperature is low.

Service
For optimal cooling performance, it is recommended to annually check the climate control system, starting three years after initial vehicle registration.
- Functionality and pressure test
- Heating functionality
- Leakage check
- Check of drive belts
- Cleaning of condenser and evaporator drainage
- Performance check
Driving hints

Control of the vehicle

Never coast with engine not running (except during Autostop)
Many systems will not function in this situation (e.g. brake servo unit, power steering). Driving in this manner is a danger to yourself and others. All systems function during an Autostop, but there will be a controlled reduction in power steering assist and vehicle speed is reduced.

Stop-start system 219.

Pedals
To ensure the pedal travel is uninhibited, there must be no mats in the area of the pedals.

Starting and operating

New vehicle running-in
Use the following precautions for the first few hundred kilometres to improve the performance and economy of your vehicle and add to its long life:

- Avoid full-throttle starts.
- Do not race the engine.
- Avoid hard stops except in emergencies. This will allow your brakes to bed in properly.
- Avoid quick starts, sudden accelerations, and prolonged high-speed driving in order to avoid damage to the engine and to conserve fuel.
- Avoid full-throttle acceleration in low gear.
- Do not tow any other vehicle.
Driving and operating

Ignition switch positions

0 = Ignition off
1 = Ignition off, steering wheel lock released
2 = Ignition on, for diesel engine: preheating
3 = Starting

Starting the engine

Starting engine with the ignition switch

- Turn the key to position 1, move the steering wheel slightly to release the steering wheel lock
- Manual transmission: press and hold clutch pedal
- Automatic transmission: press and hold brake pedal and move selector lever to P or N
- Do not accelerate

- Diesel engine: turn the key to position 2 for preheating until control indicator † goes out
- Turn the key to position 3 and release when engine is running

Before restarting or to switch off the engine, turn key back to 0.
During an Autostop, the engine can be started by depressing the clutch pedal.
Starting engine with the Start/Stop button

- The electronic key must be inside the vehicle
- Manual transmission: depress clutch and brake
- Automatic transmission: depress brake and move selector lever to P or N (for safety reasons, start engine in P)
- Do not accelerate
- Press the Start/Stop button and release when the engine is running. The green LED will illuminate as soon as the engine is running.

To switch off the engine, press the button again.

**Switching off the engine**
Push Start/Stop button while engine is running and vehicle stationary to switch off the engine.

**Accessory power mode**
Push Start/Stop button once without pressing clutch or brake pedal: Accessory power mode is active, the yellow LED in the button illuminates. In this mode steering wheel lock is released and some electrical functions are operable.

To start the engine from Accessory power mode, press clutch pedal (manual transmission) or brake pedal (automatic transmission) and push Start/Stop button once more.

**Ignition on power mode**
Push and hold Start/Stop button for 5 seconds without pressing clutch or brake pedal: Ignition on power mode is active, the green LED in the button illuminates. In this mode all electrical functions are operable and Diesel engine is preheating.

To start the engine from Ignition on power mode, press clutch pedal (manual transmission) or brake pedal (automatic transmission) and push Start/Stop button once more.

**Note**
Do not put the remote control in the luggage compartment or very close to the Info-Display.

**Emergency operation**
If either the battery of the electronic key is weak or the radio remote control fails, the driver's door can be locked or unlocked with the mechanical key 20.

The mechanical key can only lock or unlock the driver's door. Unlocking the entire vehicle 23. On vehicles with anti-theft alarm system, the alarm may be triggered when the vehicle is unlocked. Deactivate the alarm by switching on the ignition.
Open the cover in the bottom of the cupholder in the centre console. Extend the electronic key and insert it into the keyway.

Press the **Start/Stop** button.

To switch off the engine, press the **Start/Stop** button for at least 2 seconds.

Lock the driver's door with the mechanical key. Locking the entire vehicle 23.

This option is intended for emergencies only. Seek the assistance of a workshop.

---

**Starting the vehicle at low temperatures**

The start of the engine without additional heaters is possible down to -27 °C. Required is an engine oil with the correct viscosity, the correct fuel, performed services and a sufficiently charged battery. With temperatures below -27 °C the automatic transmission need a warming phase of approx. 5 minutes. The selector lever must be in position **P**.

**Overrun cut-off**

The fuel supply is automatically cut off during overrun, i.e. when the vehicle is driven with a gear engaged but accelerator is released.

---

**Stop-start system**

The stop-start system helps to save fuel and to reduce the exhaust emissions. When conditions allow, it switches off the engine as soon as the vehicle is at a low speed or at a standstill, e.g. at a traffic light or in a traffic jam. It starts the engine automatically as soon as the clutch is depressed. A battery sensor ensures that an Autostop is only performed if the battery is sufficiently charged for a restart.

**Activation**

The stop-start system is available as soon as the engine is started, the vehicle starts off and the conditions as stated below in this section are fulfilled.
Deactivation

Deactivate the stop-start system manually by pressing the ECO button. The deactivation is indicated when the LED in the button extinguishes.

Autostop

If the vehicle is at a low speed or at a standstill, activate an Autostop as follows:
- Depress the clutch pedal
- set the lever in neutral
- release the clutch pedal

The engine will be switched off while the ignition stays on.

An Autostop is indicated by the needle at the AUTOSTOP position in the tachometer.
During an Autostop, the heating and brake performance will be maintained.

Caution

The steering assist can be reduced during an Autostop.

Conditions for an Autostop

The stop-start system checks if each of the following conditions is fulfilled.
- The stop-start system is not manually deactivated
- the bonnet is fully closed
- the driver's door is closed or the driver's seat belt is fastened
- the battery is sufficiently charged and in good condition
- the engine is warmed up
- the engine coolant temperature is not too high
- the engine exhaust temperature is not too high, e.g. after driving with high engine load
- the ambient temperature is not too low
- the climate control system allows an Autostop
- the brake vacuum is sufficient
- the self-cleaning function of the diesel particle filter is not active
- the vehicle has moved since the last Autostop
Otherwise an Autostop will be inhibited.
Ambient temperature near to the freezing point can inhibit an Autostop.
Certain settings of the climate control system may inhibit an Autostop. See climate control chapter for more details.
Immediately after motorway driving an Autostop may be inhibited.
New vehicle running-in 3

Battery discharge protection
To ensure reliable engine restarts, several battery discharge protection features are implemented as part of the stop-start system.

Power saving measures
During an Autostop, several electrical features such as auxiliary electric heater or rear window heating are disabled or switched into a power saving mode. The fan speed of the climate control system is reduced to save power.

Restart of the engine by the driver
Depress the clutch pedal to restart the engine.
The engine start is indicated by the needle at the idle speed position in the tachometer.
If the selector lever is shifted out of neutral before depressing the clutch first, control indicator  illuminates or is shown as a symbol in the Driver Information Centre.
Control indicator  77.

Restart of the engine by the stop-start system
The selector lever has to be in neutral to enable an automatic restart.
If one of the following conditions occurs during an Autostop, the engine will be restarted automatically by the stop-start system.
- The stop-start system is manually deactivated
- the bonnet is opened
- the driver's seat belt is unfastened and the driver's door is opened
- the engine temperature is too low
- the battery is discharged
- the brake vacuum is not sufficient
- the vehicle starts to move
- the climate control system requests an engine start
- the air conditioning is manually switched on
If the bonnet is not fully closed, a warning message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre and the control indicator  illuminates.
Control indicator  81.
If an electrical accessory, e.g. a portable CD player, is connected to the power outlet, a brief power drop during restart might be noticeable.

Parking
- Do not park the vehicle on an easily ignitable surface. The high temperature of the exhaust system could ignite the surface.
- Always apply parking brake without pressing release button. Apply as firmly as possible on downhill or uphill slopes. Depress the footbrake at the same time to reduce operating force.
- Switch off the engine and ignition. Turn the steering wheel until the steering wheel lock engages.
- If the vehicle is on a level surface or uphill slope, engage first gear or set the selector lever to P before switching off the ignition. On an uphill slope, turn the front wheels away from the kerb. If the vehicle is on a downhill slope, engage reverse gear or set the selector lever to P before switching off the ignition. Turn the front wheels towards the kerb.
- Lock the vehicle and activate the anti-theft alarm system.

### Engine exhaust

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Danger</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**Engine exhaust gases contain poisonous carbon monoxide, which is colourless and odourless and could be fatal if inhaled.**
- If exhaust gases enter the interior of the vehicle, open the windows. Have the cause of the fault rectified by a workshop.
- Avoid driving with an open load compartment, otherwise exhaust gases could enter the vehicle.

### Diesel particle filter

The diesel particle filter system filters harmful soot particles out of the exhaust gases. The system includes a self-cleaning function that runs automatically during driving. The filter is cleaned by burning off the soot particles at high temperature. This process takes place automatically under set driving conditions and may take 10 up to 25 minutes. Autostop is not available and fuel consumption may be higher during this period. The emission of smells and smoke during this process is normal.

Under certain driving conditions, e.g. short distances, the system cannot clean itself automatically.
- If the filter requires cleaning and previous driving conditions did not enable automatic cleaning, control indicator \(\text{-filter}\) illuminates or flashes. Continue driving, maintaining a minimum speed of 50 km/h for about 15 minutes, or until the control
Driving and operating

indicator goes off. Shift down if necessary. Diesel particle filter cleaning is then started.

Stopping the journey or switching off the engine during cleaning is not recommended.

**Caution**

If the cleaning process is interrupted more than once, there is a great risk of provoking severe engine damage.

Cleaning takes place quickest at high engine speeds and loads.

The control indicator 🔴 extinguishes as soon as the self-cleaning operation is complete.

**Catalytic converter**

The catalytic converter reduces the amount of harmful substances in the exhaust gas.

**Caution**

Fuel grades other than those listed on pages 236, 302 could damage the catalytic converter or electronic components.

Unburnt petrol will overheat and damage the catalytic converter. Therefore avoid excessive use of the starter, running the fuel tank dry and starting the engine by pushing or towing.

In the event of misfiring, uneven engine running, a reduction in engine performance or other unusual problems, have the cause of the fault rectified by a workshop as soon as possible. In an emergency, driving can be continued for a short period, keeping vehicle speed and engine speed low.
Automatic transmission

The automatic transmission permits manual gearshifting (manual mode) or automatic gearshifting (automatic mode).

Transmission display

The mode or selected gear is shown in the transmission display.

Selector lever

P = park position, wheels are locked, engage only when the vehicle is stationary and the parking brake is applied,
R = reverse gear, engage only when vehicle is stationary,
N = neutral,
D = automatic mode with all gears.

The selector lever is locked in P. To move, switch on ignition, apply brake pedal and push release button.
To engage P or R, push the release button.

Do not accelerate while engaging a gear. Never depress the accelerator pedal and brake pedal at the same time.
When a gear is engaged, the vehicle slowly begins to creep when the brake is released.

Engine braking
To utilise the engine braking effect, select a lower gear in good time when driving downhill.

Rocking the vehicle
Rocking the vehicle is only permissible if the vehicle is stuck in sand, mud or snow. Move the selector lever between D and R in a repeat pattern. Do not race the engine and avoid sudden acceleration.

Parking
Apply the parking brake, engage P and remove ignition key.
Manual mode

Move selector lever out of position D towards the left and then forwards or backwards.

\[+\] = Shift to a higher gear.

\[-\] = Shift to a lower gear.

If a higher gear is selected when vehicle speed is too low, or a lower gear when vehicle speed is too high, the shift is not executed.

If engine speed is too low, the transmission automatically shifts to a lower gear above a specific vehicle speed.

No automatic shifting to a higher gear takes place at high engine revolutions.

Electronic driving programmes

- Following a cold start, the operating temperature programme increases engine speed to quickly bring the catalytic converter to the required temperature.
- The automatic neutral shift function automatically shifts to idling when the vehicle is stopped with a forward gear engaged.

Kickdown

For faster acceleration press the accelerator pedal all the way down and hold. The transmission shifts to a lower gear depending on the engine speed.

Fault

In the event of a fault, the malfunction indicator light \(\Rightarrow\) illuminates. The transmission no longer shifts automatically nor manually because it is locked in a certain gear.

Have the cause of the fault remedied by a workshop.
Interruption of power supply

In the event of an interruption of power supply, the selector lever cannot be moved out of the P position. The ignition key cannot be removed from the ignition lock.

If the battery is discharged, start the vehicle using jump leads 3 283.

If the battery is not the cause of the fault, release selector lever and remove ignition key from ignition lock.

Release selector lever

1. Apply parking brake.

2. Open cover to the right of the selector lever.

3. Insert a screwdriver into the opening as far as it will go and move the selector lever out of P. If P is engaged again, the selector lever will be locked in position again. Have the cause of the power supply interruption remedied by a workshop.


Manual transmission

To engage reverse, with the vehicle stationary pull up the ring on the selector lever and engage the gear.

If the gear does not engage, set the lever in neutral, release the clutch pedal and depress again; then repeat gear selection.

Do not slip the clutch unnecessarily.

When operating, depress the clutch pedal completely. Do not use the pedal as a foot rest.
Caution
It is advisable to have both hands on the steering wheel whenever possible. Avoid resting your hands on the selector lever.

Brakes
The brake system comprises two independent brake circuits. If a brake circuit fails, the vehicle can still be braked using the other brake circuit. However, braking effect is achieved only when the brake pedal is depressed firmly. Considerably more force is needed for this. The braking distance is extended. Seek the assistance of a workshop before continuing your journey. When the engine is not running, the support of the brake servo unit disappears once the brake pedal has been depressed once or twice. Braking effect is not reduced, but braking requires significantly greater force. It is especially important to bear this in mind when being towed. After starting off, the system performs a selftest which may be audible. Control indicator R 3 77.

Antilock brake system
Antilock brake system (ABS) prevents the wheels from locking. ABS starts to regulate brake pressure as soon as a wheel shows a tendency to lock. The vehicle remains steerable, even during hard braking. ABS control is made apparent through a pulse in the brake pedal and the noise of the regulation process. For optimum braking, keep the brake pedal fully depressed throughout the braking process, despite the fact that the pedal is pulsating. Do not reduce the pressure on the pedal. Control indicator u 3 77.

Fault
If there is a fault in the ABS, the wheels may be liable to lock due to braking that is heavier than normal. The advantages of ABS are no longer available. During
Driving and operating

hard braking, the vehicle can no longer be steered and may swerve.

Have the cause of the fault remedied by a workshop.

Parking brake

Always apply parking brake firmly without operating the release button, and apply as firmly as possible on a downhill or uphill slope.

To release the parking brake, pull the lever up slightly, press the release button and fully lower the lever.

To reduce the operating forces of the parking brake, depress the foot brake at the same time.

Control indicator ⚪ 77.

Brake assist

If the brake pedal is depressed quickly and forcefully, maximum brake force is automatically applied (full braking).

Maintain steady pressure on the brake pedal for as long as full braking is required. Maximum brake force is automatically reduced when the brake pedal is released.

Ride control systems

Traction Control system

Traction control system (TC) improves driving stability when necessary, regardless of the type of road surface or tyre grip, by preventing the driving wheels from spinning.

As soon as the driving wheels start to spin, engine output is reduced and the wheel spinning the most is braked individually. This considerably improves the driving stability of the vehicle on slippery road surfaces.

TC is operational as soon as the control indicator ⚪ extinguishes.

When TC is active ⚪ flashes.
**Warning**

Do not let this special safety feature tempt you into taking risks when driving.
Adapt speed to the road conditions.

Control indicator ⚠ 79.

**Deactivation**

TC can be switched off when spinning of drive wheels is required: press button ⚠ for approx. 2 seconds.
Control indicator ⚠ illuminates.

TC is reactivated by pressing the ⚠ button again.
TC is also reactivated the next time the ignition is switched on.

**Electronic Stability Control**

Electronic stability control (ESC) improves driving stability when necessary, regardless of the type of road surface or tyre grip. It also prevents the driving wheels from spinning.

As soon as the vehicle starts to swerve (understeer/oversteer), engine output is reduced and the wheels are braked individually. This considerably improves the driving stability of the vehicle on slippery road surfaces.

ESC is operational as soon as the control indicator ⚠ extinguishes.
When ESC is active ⚠ flashes.

**Warning**

Do not let this special safety feature tempt you into taking risks when driving.
Adapt speed to the road conditions.

Control indicator ⚠ 79.

**Deactivation**

For very high-performance driving ESC can be deactivated: hold button ⚠ depressed for approx. 7 seconds.
Control indicator ⚠ illuminates.
Driving and operating

ESC is reactivated by pressing the button again. If the TC System was previously disabled, both TC and ESC are reactivated. ESC is also reactivated the next time the ignition is switched on.

Cruise control

The cruise control can store and maintain speeds of approx. 40 to 200 km/h. Deviations from the stored speeds may occur when driving uphill or downhill.

For safety reasons the cruise control cannot be activated until the foot brake has been operated once.

Do not use the cruise control if it is not advisable to maintain a constant speed.

With automatic transmission, only activate cruise control in automatic mode.

Control indicator \( \Rightarrow \) 80.

Switching on

Press rocker switch \( \Rightarrow \) at the upper end, control indicator \( \Rightarrow \) illuminates white.

Activation

Accelerate to the desired speed and turn thumb wheel to SET/-, the current speed is stored and maintained. Control indicator \( \Rightarrow \) illuminates green. Accelerator pedal can be released.

Vehicle speed can be increased by depressing the accelerator pedal. When the accelerator pedal is released, the previously stored speed is resumed.

The gear can be changed while the cruise control is activated.
Increase speed
With cruise control active, hold thumb wheel turned to RES/+ or briefly turn to RES/+ repeatedly: speed increases continuously or in small increments.
Alternatively accelerate to the desired speed and store by turning to RES/+.

Reduce speed
With cruise control active, hold thumb wheel turned to SET/- or briefly turn to SET/- repeatedly: speed decreases continuously or in small increments.

Deactivation
Press button , control indicator illuminates white. Cruise control is deactivated. The stored speed is memorised.
Automatic deactivation:
- vehicle speed below approx. 40 km/h,
- the brake pedal is depressed,
- the clutch pedal is depressed for more than a few seconds,
- selector lever in N,
- the Traction Control system or electronic stability control is operating.

Resume stored speed
Turn thumb wheel to RES/+ at a speed above 40 km/h. The stored speed will be obtained. If the difference between the current speed and the stored speed is more than 40 km/h, the vehicle cannot resume the stored speed.

Switching off
Press rocker switch at the lower end, control indicator extinguishes. The stored speed is deleted. Switching off the ignition also deletes the stored speed.

Object detection systems
Parking assist

The parking assist makes parking easier by measuring the distance between the vehicle and rear obstacles, and giving acoustic signals. It is the driver, however, who bears full responsibility for the parking manoeuvre.
The system consists of four ultrasonic parking sensors in the rear bumper. Control indicator 78.
Driving and operating

Note
Any accessories fitted to the vehicle in the detection area may cause a system malfunction.

Activation
When reverse gear is engaged, the system is activated automatically. An obstacle is indicated by acoustic warnings. The interval between the warnings becomes shorter as the vehicle gets closer to the obstacle. When the distance is less than 40 cm, the acoustic warning sounds continuously.

Deactivation
The system is deactivated automatically when
- the vehicle is driven above 10 km/h
- the vehicle is parked
- a fault in the system occurs.

Fault
In the event of a fault in the system, \( P \▲ \) illuminates.

Additionally if the system does not work due to temporary conditions like snow covered sensors, \( P \▲ \) illuminates.

Important hints for using the parking assist systems

⚠️ Warning
Under certain circumstances, various reflective surfaces on objects or clothing as well as external noise sources may cause the system to fail to detect obstacles.

Caution
Performance of the sensor can be reduced when sensors are covered, e.g. by ice or snow.
Performance of the parking assist systems can be reduced by a level change of the sensors.

Particular conditions apply for high vehicles (e.g. off-road vehicles, mini vans, transporters). Object identification in the upper part of the vehicle cannot be guaranteed. Objects with a very small reflection cross section, like objects of narrow size or soft materials, may not be detected by the system.
Parking assist systems are not effective in assisting drivers in avoiding unexpected objects.

Note
Sensor could detect a nonexisting object (echo disturbance) caused by external acoustical or mechanic disturbances.

Side blind spot alert
The Side blind spot alert system detects and reports objects on either side of the vehicle, within a specified "blind spot" zone. The system alerts visually in each side rear view mirror, when detecting objects that may not be visible in the inside and outside rear view mirrors.
The system’s sensors are located in the bumper on the left and right side of the vehicle.

**Warning**

Side blind spot alert does not replace driver vision.

The system does not detect:
- Vehicles outside the side blind zones which may be rapidly approaching.
- Pedestrians, cyclists or animals.

Before changing a lane, always check all mirrors, look over the shoulder and use the turn signal.

When the system detects a vehicle in the side blind zone while driving forward, either while passing a vehicle or being passed, an amber warning symbol \( \text{symbol} \) will light up in the relevant outside mirror. If the driver then activates the turn signal, the warning symbol \( \text{symbol} \) starts flashing amber as a warning not to change lanes.

Side blind spot alert is active from speeds of 40 km/h up to 140 km/h. Driving faster than 140 km/h deactivates the system, indicated by low lighting warning symbols \( \text{symbol} \) in both outside mirrors. Reducing the speed again will extinguish the warning symbols. If a vehicle is then detected in the blind zone, the warning symbols \( \text{symbol} \) will illuminate as normal on the relevant side.

When the vehicle is started, both outside mirror displays will briefly come on to indicate that the system is operating.

The system can be activated or deactivated in the menu **Settings** in the Info-Display, vehicle personalisation \( \text{symbol} \). Deactivation is indicated by a message in the Driver Information Centre.

**Detection zones**

The system sensor covers a zone of approx. 3 metres on both sides of the vehicle. This zone starts at each side mirror and extends rearwards by approx. 3 metres. The height of the zone is approx. between 0.5 metres and 2 metres off the ground.

The detection zones will not change if the vehicle is towing a trailer.

Side blind spot alert is designed to ignore stationary objects such as guardrails, posts, curbs, walls and beams. Parked vehicles or oncoming vehicles are not detected.

**Fault**

Occasional missed alerts can occur under normal circumstances and will increase in wet conditions.
Side blind spot alert does not operate when the left or right corners of the rear bumper are covered with mud, dirt, snow, ice, slush, or in heavy rainstorms. Cleaning instructions 287.

In the event of a fault in the system or if the system does not work due to temporary conditions, a message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre. Seek the assistance of a workshop.

Rear view camera
The rear view camera assists the driver when reversing by displaying a view of the area behind the vehicle. The view of the camera is displayed in the Colour-Info-Display.

⚠️ Warning
The rear view camera does not replace driver vision. Note that objects that are outside the camera's field of view and the advanced parking assist sensors, e.g. below the bumper or underneath the vehicle, are not displayed.

Do not reverse the vehicle by only looking at the Info-Display and check the surrounding behind and around the vehicle before reversing.

Activation
Rear view camera is automatically activated when reverse gear is engaged.

Functionality

4-doors: The camera is mounted under the tailgate moulding.

5-doors hatchback: The camera is mounted in the rear bumper above the license plate.
Station wagon: The camera is mounted under the tailgate moulding.

The camera has a viewing angle of 130°. Due to the high position of the camera the rear bumper can be seen on the display as a guide to position. The area displayed by the camera is limited. The distance of the image that appears on the display differs from the actual distance.

**Guiding lines**
Dynamic guiding lines are horizontal lines in 1 metre intervals projected on the picture to define the distance to shown objects.

Trajectory lane of the vehicle is shown in accordance with the steering angle. The function can be deactivated in the menu **Settings** in the Info-Display. Vehicle personalisation ☰ 90.

**Warning symbols**
Warning symbols are indicated as triangles △ on the picture which show obstacles detected by the rear sensors of the advanced parking assist.

**Display settings**
Driving and operating

Brightness can be set with the up/down buttons of the multifunction knob.
Contrast can be set with left/right buttons of the multifunction knob.

Deactivation
The camera is deactivated when a certain forward speed is exceeded or if reverse gear is not engaged for approx. 10 seconds.
Activation or deactivation of the rear view camera can be changed in the menu Settings in the Info-Display. Vehicle personalisation 🔗 90.

Fault
Fault messages are displayed with a △ on the top line of the Info-Display.
The rear view camera may not operate properly when:
- the surrounding is dark,
- the sun or the beam of headlights is shining directly into the camera lens,
- ice, snow, mud, or anything else covers the camera lens. Clean the lens, rinse it with water, and wipe it with a soft cloth,
- the tailgate is not closed correctly,
- the vehicle had a rear end accident,
- there are extreme temperature changes.

Fuel

Fuel for petrol engines
Only use unleaded fuel that complies with European standard EN 228 or E DIN 51626-1 or equivalent.
Your engine is capable to run with E10 fuel that fulfills these standards. E10 fuel contains up to 10% bioethanol.
Use fuel with the recommended octane rating 🔗 302. Use of fuel with too low an octane rating can reduce engine power and torque and slightly increases fuel consumption.

Caution
Do not use fuel or fuel additives that contain metallic compounds such as manganese-based additives. This may cause engine damage.
### Caution

Use of fuel that does not comply to EN 228 or E DIN 51626-1 or equivalent can lead to deposits or engine damage and may affect your warranty.

### Caution

Use of fuel with too low an octane rating could lead to uncontrolled combustion and engine damage.

### Fuel for diesel engines

Only use diesel fuel that complies with EN 590.

In countries outside the European Union use Euro-Diesel fuel with a sulfur concentration below 50 ppm.

### Caution

Use of fuel that does not comply to EN 590 or similar can lead to engine powerloss, increased wear or engine damage and may affect your warranty.

Do not use marine diesel oils, heating oils, Aquazole and similar diesel-water emulsions. Diesel fuels must not be diluted with fuels for petrol engines.

The flow and filterability of diesel fuel are temperature-dependent. When temperatures are low, refuel with diesel fuel with guaranteed winter properties.

### Refuelling

**Danger**

Before refuelling, switch off engine and any external heaters with combustion chambers. Switch off any mobile phones.

Follow the operating and safety instructions of the filling station when refuelling.
∆ Danger

Fuel is flammable and explosive. No smoking. No naked flames or sparks.
If you can smell fuel in your vehicle, have the cause of this remedied immediately by an authorized dealer.

Caution

In case of misfuelling, do not switch on ignition.

Fuel filler flap is located at right rear side of vehicle.

The fuel filler flap can only be opened if the vehicle is unlocked. Release the fuel filler flap by pushing the flap. To open, turn the cap slowly anti-clockwise.

The fuel filler cap can be retained in the bracket on the fuel filler flap. For refuelling, fully insert the pump nozzle and switch it on. After automatic cut-off, it can be topped up with max. two doses of fuel.

Caution

Wipe off any overflowing fuel immediately.

To close, turn the fuel filler cap clockwise until it clicks. Close the flap and let engage.
Fuel filler cap
Only a genuine fuel filler cap provides full functionality. Diesel-engined vehicles have special fuel filler caps.

Fuel consumption - CO₂-Emissions

Petrol and Diesel engines
The fuel consumption (combined) of the model Chevrolet Cruze is within a range of 7.3 to 3.7 l/100 km.
The CO₂ emission (combined) is within a range of 170 to 99 g/km.
For the values specific for your vehicle, refer to the EEC Certificate of Conformity provided with your vehicle or other national registration documents.

General information
The official fuel consumption and specific CO₂ emission figures quoted relate to the EU base model with standard equipment.

Fuel consumption data and CO₂ emission data are determined according to regulation R (EC) No. 715/2007 (in the version respectively applicable), taking into consideration the vehicle weight in running order, as specified by the regulation.
The figures are provided only for the purpose of comparison between different vehicle variants and must not be taken as a guarantee for the actual fuel consumption of a particular vehicle. Additional equipment may result in slightly higher results than the stated consumption and CO₂ figures.
Furthermore, fuel consumption is dependent on personal driving style as well as road and traffic conditions.
Vehicle care

General Information

Accessories and vehicle modifications
We recommend to use genuine parts and accessories and factory approved parts specific for your vehicle type. We cannot assess or guarantee reliability of other products - even if they have a regulatory or otherwise granted approval.

Do not make any modifications to the electrical system, e.g. changes of electronic control units (chip tuning).

Vehicle storage

Storage for a long period of time
If the vehicle is to be stored for several months:
- Wash and wax the vehicle.
- Have the wax in the engine compartment and underbody checked.
- Clean and preserve rubber seals.
- Fill up fuel tank completely.
- Change engine oil.
- Drain washer fluid reservoir.
- Check coolant anti-freeze and corrosion protection.
- Adjust tyre pressure to the value specified for full load.
- Park the vehicle in a dry, well ventilated place. Engage first or reverse gear or set the selector lever to P. Prevent the vehicle from rolling.
- Do not apply the parking brake.
- Open the bonnet, close all doors and lock the vehicle.
- Disconnect the clamp from the negative terminal of the vehicle battery. Beware that all systems are not functional, e.g. anti-theft alarm system.

Putting back into operation
When the vehicle is to be put back into operation:
- Connect the clamp to the negative terminal of the vehicle battery. Activate the electronics of the power windows.
- Check tyre pressure.
- Fill up the washer fluid reservoir.
- Check the engine oil level.
- Check the coolant level.
- Fit the number plate if necessary.

**End-of-life vehicle recovery**

Information on end-of-life vehicle recovery centres and the recycling of end-of-life vehicles is available on our website. Only entrust this work to an authorised recycling centre.

**Vehicle checks**

**Performing work**

**Warning**

Only perform engine compartment checks when the ignition is off. The cooling fan may start operating even if the ignition is off.

**Danger**

The ignition system uses extremely high voltage. Do not touch.

**Bonnet**

**Opening**

Pull the release lever and return it to its original position.
Push the safety catch to the left and open the bonnet.

⚠️ Warning

When the engine is hot, only touch the foam padding of the bonnet support rod handle.

Air intake 214.

Secure the bonnet support. If the bonnet is opened during an Autostop, the engine will be restarted automatically for safety reasons. Control indicator ➔ 81.

Closing

Before closing the bonnet, press the support into the holder. Lower the bonnet and allow it to drop into the catch. Check that the bonnet is engaged.
Engine compartment overview

Petrol engine, LDD
Petrol engine, LUJ and LUV

Vehicle care
Petrol engine, LDE and 2H0
Petrol engine, LXT
Diesel engine, LUD and LKR
Diesel engine, LNP
1. Power steering fluid reservoir 251
2. Engine oil cap 249
3. Brake fluid reservoir 252
4. Engine coolant reservoir 250
5. Fuse box 265
6. Washer fluid reservoir 251
7. Battery 252
8. Dipstick for engine oil level 249
9. Engine air filter 250

**Engine oil**

Check the engine oil level on a regular basis to prevent damage to the engine. Ensure that the correct specification of oil is used.

Recommended fluids and lubricants 296.

Check with the vehicle on a level surface. The engine must be at operating temperature and switched off for at least 10 minutes.

Pull out the dipstick, wipe it clean, insert it to the stop on the handle, pull out and read the engine oil level. Insert dipstick to the stop on the handle and make half a turn.

Different dipsticks are used depending on engine variant.

When the engine oil level has dropped to the MIN mark, top up engine oil.
Vehicle care

We recommend the use of the same grade of engine oil that was used at last change.

The engine oil level must not exceed the MAX mark on the dipstick.

**Caution**

Overfilled engine oil must be drained or suctioned out.

Capacities 314.

Fit the engine oil cap on straight and tighten it.

**Caution**

When driving at a slope, the warning code 79 might be displayed in the Driver Information Centre 87.

If the code disappears when driving in a flat area again, do not top up engine oil.

---

**Engine air filter**

To replace engine air filter unscrew 6 screws and remove filter housing.

---

**Engine coolant**

The coolant provides freeze protection down to approx. -27 °C.

Maintain a sufficient concentration of anti-freeze.

**Caution**

Only use approved anti-freeze.

---

**Coolant level**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Caution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Too low a coolant level can cause engine damage.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If the cooling system is cold, the coolant level should be above the filling line mark. Top up if the level is low.
**Warning**

Allow the engine to cool before opening the cap. Carefully open the cap, relieving the pressure slowly.

Top up with a mixture of demineralised water and anti-freeze approved for the vehicle. Install the cap tightly. Have the anti-freeze concentration checked and have the cause of the coolant loss remedied by a workshop.

### Power steering fluid

**Caution**

Extremely small amounts of contamination can cause steering system damage and cause it to not work properly. Do not allow contaminates to contact the fluid side of the reservoir cap/dipstick or from entering the reservoir.

Open the cap and remove it. Wipe the dipstick dry and turn the cap in the reservoir. Open the cap again, remove it and read the power steering fluid level.

The power steering fluid level must be between the MIN and the MAX marks. If the fluid level is too low, seek the assistance of a workshop.

**Washer fluid**

Fill with windscreen washer fluid concentrate.

### Brakes

In the event of minimum thickness of the brake lining, 🚹 illuminates.

Continued driving is possible but have the brake lining replaced as soon as possible.

Once new brake linings are installed, do not brake unnecessarily hard for the first few journeys.
Brake fluid

⚠️ Warning

Brake fluid is poisonous and corrosive. Avoid contact with eyes, skin, fabrics and painted surfaces.

The brake fluid level must be between the MIN and the MAX marks. When topping up, ensure maximum cleanliness as contamination of the brake fluid can lead to brake system malfunctions. Have the cause of the loss of brake fluid remedied by a workshop.

Only use high-performance brake fluid approved for the vehicle, Brake and clutch fluid ☞ 296.

Vehicle battery

Vehicles without stop-start system will be equipped with a lead acid battery. Vehicles with stop-start system will be equipped with an AGM battery which is not a lead acid battery.

The vehicle battery is maintenance-free provided that the driving profile allows sufficient charging of the battery. Short distance driving and frequent engine starts can discharge the battery. Avoid the use of unnecessary electrical consumers.

Batteries do not belong in household waste. They must be disposed of at an appropriate recycling collection point. Laying up the vehicle for more than 4 weeks can lead to battery discharge. Disconnect the clamp from the negative terminal of the vehicle battery.

Ensure the ignition is switched off before connecting or disconnecting the vehicle battery.

⚠️ Warning

Keep burning objects away from the battery to avoid explosion. Battery explosion can result in damage to the vehicle and serious injury or death.

Avoid contact with eyes, skin, fabrics and painted surfaces. The fluid contains sulphuric acid which can cause injuries and damage in the event of direct contact. In case
of skin contact, clean the area with water and seek medical help immediately.
Keep out of reach of children.
Do not tilt an open battery.

Vehicle battery discharge protection 106.

Replacing the vehicle battery

Note
Any deviation from the instructions given in this paragraph may lead to a temporary deactivation of the stop-start system.

When the vehicle battery is being replaced, please ensure that there are no open ventilation holes in the vicinity of the positive terminal. If a ventilation hole is open in this area, it must be closed off with a dummy cap, and the ventilation in the vicinity of the negative terminal must be opened.
Only use vehicle batteries that allow the fuse box to be mounted above the vehicle battery.

In vehicles with stop-start system, ensure to have the AGM (Absorptive Glass Mat) vehicle battery replaced with an AGM vehicle battery again. An AGM battery can be identified by the term AGM on the battery label. We recommend the use of an original Chevrolet vehicle battery.

Note
Using an AGM vehicle battery different from the original Chevrolet vehicle battery might result in a lower performance of the stop-start system.

We recommend that you have the vehicle battery replaced by a workshop.
Stop-start system 219.

Charging the vehicle battery

Warning
On vehicles with stop-start system, ensure that the charging potential does not exceed

14.6 volts when using a battery charger. Otherwise the vehicle battery might be damaged.

Jump starting 283.

Warning label

Meaning of symbols:
- No sparks, naked flames or smoking.
- Always shield eyes. Explosive gases can cause blindness or injury.
- Keep the vehicle battery out of reach of children.
- The vehicle battery contains sulfuric acid which could cause blindness or serious burn injuries.
- See the Owner’s Manual for further information.
- Explosive gas may be present in the vicinity of the vehicle battery.

**Diesel fuel system bleeding**

If the tank has been run dry, the diesel fuel system must be bled. Switch on the ignition three times for 15 seconds at a time. Then crank the engine for a maximum of 40 seconds. Repeat this process after no less than 5 seconds. If the engine fails to start, seek the assistance of a workshop.

**Wiper blade replacement**

Lift wiper arm. Press release lever and detach wiper blade.

**Wiper blade on the rear window**

Lift wiper arm. Disengage wiper blade as shown in illustration and remove. Attach the wiper blade slightly angled to the wiper arm and push until it engages. Lower wiper arm carefully.
Bulb replacement

Switch off the ignition and switch off the relevant switch or close the doors. Only hold a new bulb at the base! Do not touch the bulb glass with bare hands.

Use only the same bulb type for replacement.

Replace headlight bulbs from within the engine compartment.

Halogen headlights

Low beam and high beam

1. Detach plug connector from bulb.

2. Remove protective cover.

3. Press spring clip, disengage and swivel it upward.

4. Remove bulb from reflector housing.

5. When fitting a new bulb, engage the lugs in the recesses on the reflector.

6. Engage the spring clip.

7. Place headlamp protective cover in position and close.

8. Plug connector onto bulb.

Side lights

1. Detach plug connector from bulb.
2. Remove protective cover.

3. Remove side light bulb holder from reflector.

4. Remove bulb from socket.
5. Insert new bulb.
6. Insert holder in reflector.
7. Place headlamp protective cover in position and close.
8. Plug connector onto bulb.

**Front turn signal and parking lights**

1. Rotate bulb holder anti-clockwise and disengage.
2. Push bulb into socket slightly, rotate anti-clockwise, remove and renew bulb.
3. Insert bulb holder in reflector, rotate clockwise to engage.

**Fog lights**
Have bulbs replaced by a workshop.

**Tail lights**

**4-doors**

1. Open both covers.
2. Unscrew both screws.
3. Remove tail light assembly. Take care that the cable duct remains in position.
4. Reverse light (1)
   Turn signal light (2)
   Tail light/brake light (3)
5. Rotate bulb holder anti-clockwise.

6. Remove bulb holder. Push bulb into socket slightly, rotate anti-clockwise, remove and renew bulb.


8. Switch on ignition, operate and check all lights.

---

**Light assembly in the tailgate**

Rear fog light/Reverse light, depending on the side.

1. Remove the boot lid panelling.
2. Rotate bulb holder anti-clockwise.

3. Remove bulb holder. Push bulb into socket slightly, rotate anti-clockwise, remove and renew bulb.

4. Insert bulb holder into boot lid. Refit the inner panelling to boot lid.

5. Switch on ignition, operate and check the lights.
5-doors hatchback

1. Open the three covers.

2. Unscrew the three screws.

3. Remove tail light assembly. Take care that the cable duct remains in position.

4. Turn signal light (1)
   Tail light/brake light (2)

5. Rotate bulb holder anti-clockwise.
6. Remove bulb holder. Push bulb into socket slightly, rotate anti-clockwise, remove and renew bulb.


8. Switch on ignition, operate and check all lights.

**Reverse light**
Have bulb replaced by a workshop.

**Fog tail light**
Have bulb replaced by a workshop.

---

**Station wagon**

1. Open both covers.

2. Unscrew both screws.

3. Remove tail light assembly. Take care that the cable duct remains in position.
4. Turn signal light (1)  
   Tail light/brake light (2)

5. Rotate bulb holder anti-clockwise.

6. Remove bulb holder. Push bulb into socket slightly, rotate anti-clockwise, remove and renew bulb.
8. Switch on ignition, operate and check all lights.

Light assembly in the tailgate

1. Open the tailgate and remove the cover on the respective side.
2. Remove the bulb holder by turning anti-clockwise. Replace the bulb by pushing it slightly into the socket and rotating anticlockwise:
   - Rear fog light/Reverse light (1), depending on the side.
   - Tail light (2).
3. Insert bulb holder and turn clockwise. Attach cover.
4. Switch on ignition, operate and check the lights.
Side turn signal lights
1. Push light towards the back of the vehicle and remove.
2. Rotate bulb holder anti-clockwise.
3. Pull bulb out of the bulb holder and renew.
4. Reinstall in reverse order.

Number plate light
4-doors
1. Unscrew both screws.
2. Remove bulb housing downward, taking care not to pull on the cable.
   Rotate bulb holder anti-clockwise to disengage.
3. Remove bulb from holder and renew bulb.
4. Insert bulb holder in bulb housing and rotate clockwise.
5. Insert bulb housing and secure using a screwdriver.

5-doors hatchback, Station wagon
1. Insert screwdriver in bulb housing, press to the side and release spring.
2. Remove bulb housing downward, taking care not to pull on the cable.
3. Rotate bulb holder anti-clockwise to disengage.
4. Remove bulb from holder and renew bulb.
5. Insert bulb holder in bulb housing and rotate clockwise.
6. Insert and engage bulb housing.

**Interior lights**

**Courtesy light, reading lights**
Have bulbs replaced by a workshop.

**Load compartment light**

1. Prise the lamp out with a screwdriver.
2. Press bulb slightly towards spring clip and remove.
3. Insert new bulb.
4. Install lamp.

**Instrument panel illumination**
Have bulbs replaced by a workshop.
**Electrical system**

**Fuses**

Data on the replacement fuse must match the data on the defective fuse. There are two fuse boxes in the vehicle:
- in the front left of the engine compartment,
- in the interior behind the storage compartment, or, in right-hand drive vehicles, behind the glove box.

In a box above the positive terminal of the battery are some main fuses. If necessary have them changed by a workshop.

Before replacing a fuse, turn off the respective switch and the ignition.

A blown fuse can be recognised by its melted wire. Do not replace the fuse until the cause of the fault has been remedied.

Some functions are protected by several fuses.

Fuses may also be inserted without existence of a function.

**Fuse extractor**

A fuse extractor may be located in the fuse box in the engine compartment.
Place the fuse extractor on the various types of fuse from the top or side, and withdraw fuse.

Engine compartment fuse box

The fuse box is in the front left of the engine compartment. Disengage the cover, lift it upwards and remove. Not all fuse box descriptions in this manual may apply to your vehicle. When inspecting the fuse box, refer to the fuse box label.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Circuit</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Transmission control module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Engine control module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Canister vent solenoid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Ignition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Front wipers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Fuel injection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>Fuel injection, ignition system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Engine control module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>Lambda sensor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>Starter solenoid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>Canister vent solenoid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>Rear wiper</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>Ignition, Air quality sensor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>Ignition, Airbag</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>Fuel control module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>Fuel pump</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>Rear power windows</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>Front power windows</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>Electronic vacuum pump</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>ABS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>Electronic key system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td>Heated rear window</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>ABS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31</td>
<td>Body control module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32</td>
<td>Body control module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33</td>
<td>Front seat heating</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34</td>
<td>Sunroof</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35</td>
<td>Infotainment system, Amplifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37</td>
<td>High beam, right side</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38</td>
<td>High beam, left side</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42</td>
<td>Cooling fan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45</td>
<td>Cooling fan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46</td>
<td>Cooling fan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>47</td>
<td>Lambda sensor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48</td>
<td>Fog lights</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51</td>
<td>Horn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No.</td>
<td>Circuit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----</td>
<td>------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52</td>
<td>Instrument panel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53</td>
<td>Electrochromatic mirror</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54</td>
<td>Light switch, Light control</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55</td>
<td>Mirror folding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56</td>
<td>Windscreen washer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57</td>
<td>Steering column lock</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>59</td>
<td>Diesel fuel heating</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60</td>
<td>Mirror heating</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>61</td>
<td>Mirror heating</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62</td>
<td>Air condition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>63</td>
<td>Rear window sensor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>64</td>
<td>Air quality sensor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65</td>
<td>Rear fog lamp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>66</td>
<td>Rear washer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>67</td>
<td>Fuel system control module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>68</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>69</td>
<td>Battery voltage sensor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70</td>
<td>Rain sensor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>71</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Instrument panel fuse box**

3. Remove the compartment through both grooves in the direction of the arrows. Reinstall the compartment in reverse order.

The fuse box is behind the storage compartment in the instrument panel.

1. Open the compartment.
2. Remove the lower side of compartment in the direction of the arrows.
In right-hand drive vehicles, the fuse box is located behind a cover in the glovebox. Open the glovebox and remove the cover.

Not all fuse box descriptions in this manual may apply to your vehicle. When inspecting the fuse box, refer to the fuse box label.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Circuit</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Infotainment system, handsfree phone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>DC/DC converter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Body control unit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Infotainment system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Info display, parking assist, power sounder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Cigarette lighter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Power outlet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Body control module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>Body control module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Body control module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>Interior fan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>Heated seats</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>Diagnostic connector</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>Airbag</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>Central locking system, tailgate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>Air conditioning system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>Trailer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>Shift lever</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>Shift lever, battery sensor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>Instrument</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>Ignition, electronic key system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>Body control module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>Body control module</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Vehicle tools

Tools

Vehicles with tyre repair kit

The tools and tyre repair kit are in a storage compartment below the floor cover in the load compartment.

Vehicles with spare wheel

The jack and the tools are in a storage compartment in the load compartment below the spare wheel. Spare wheel 282.
**Wheels and tyres**

**Tyre condition, wheel condition**
Drive over edges slowly and at right angles if possible. Driving over sharp edges can cause tyre and wheel damage. Do not trap tyres on the kerb when parking.
Regularly check the wheels for damage. Seek the assistance of a workshop in the event of damage or unusual wear.

**Winter tyres**
Winter tyres improve driving safety at temperatures below 7 °C and should therefore be fitted on all wheels.
In accordance with country-specific regulations, affix the speed sticker in the driver's field of view.
Tyres of size 205/60 R 16, 215/50 R 17 and 225/50 R 17 can be used as winter tyres.
Tyres of size 215/60 R 16 and 225/55 R 16 must not be used as winter tyres.

**Tyre designations**
E.g. 215/60 R 16 95 H

- **215** = Tyre width, mm
- **60** = Cross-section ratio (tyre height to tyre width), %
- **R** = Belt type: Radial
- **RF** = Type: RunFlat
- **16** = Wheel diameter, inches
- **95** = Load index e.g. 95 is equivalent to 690 kg
- **H** = Speed code letter

**Speed code letter:**
- **Q** = up to 160 km/h
- **S** = up to 180 km/h
- **T** = up to 190 km/h
- **H** = up to 210 km/h
- **V** = up to 240 km/h
- **W** = up to 270 km/h

**Tyre pressure**
Check the pressure of cold tyres at least every 14 days and before any long journey. Do not forget the spare wheel if installed.
Unscrew the valve cap.

Tyre pressure 315 and on the label on the driver's door frame.
The tyre pressure data refers to cold tyres. It applies to summer and winter tyres.
Always inflate the spare tyre to the pressure specified for full load.
The ECO tyre pressure will assist in reducing fuel consumption.
Incorrect tyre pressures will impair safety, vehicle handling, comfort and fuel economy and will increase tyre wear.
Tyre pressures differ depending on various options. For the correct tyre pressure value, follow the procedure below:

1. Identify drive axle and body style.
2. Identify the engine identifier code. Engine data
3. Identify the respective tyre.

The tyre pressure tables show all possible tyre combinations.

For the tyres approved for your vehicle, refer to the EEC Certificate of Conformity provided with your vehicle or other national registration documents.

The driver is responsible for correct adjustment of tyre pressure.

⚠️ Warning

If the pressure is too low, this can result in considerable tyre warm-up and internal damage, leading to tread separation and even to tyre blow-out at high speeds.

Tyre pressure monitoring system

The Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) uses radio and sensor technology to check tyre pressure levels. The TPMS sensors monitor the air pressure in your tyres and transmit tyre pressure readings to a receiver located in the vehicle.

Each tyre, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tyre inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tyres of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tyre inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tyre inflation pressure for those tyres.)

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a TPMS that illuminates a low tyre pressure telltale when one or more of your tyres is significantly under-inflated.

Accordingly, when the low tyre pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tyres as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tyre causes the tyre to overheat and can lead to tyre failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tyre tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tyre maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tyre pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tyre pressure telltale.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tyre pressure telltale.

When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This
sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists.

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tyre pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tyres or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tyres or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tyres and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly. Tyre pressure monitor operation \( \diamond \) 272.

**Tyre pressure monitor operation**

This vehicle may have a Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS). The TPMS is designed to warn the driver when a low tyre pressure condition exists. TPMS sensors are mounted onto each tyre and wheel assembly, excluding the spare tyre and wheel assembly. The TPMS sensors monitor the air pressure in the tyres and transmit the tyre pressure readings to a receiver located in the vehicle.

When a low tyre pressure condition is detected, the TPMS illuminates the low tyre pressure warning light located on the instrument cluster. If the warning light comes on, stop as soon as possible and inflate the tyres to the recommended pressure shown on the tyre pressure label \( \diamond \) 270.

A message to check the pressure in a specific tyre displays in the Driver Information Centre (DIC) display. The low tyre pressure warning light and the DIC warning message come on at each ignition cycle until the tyres are inflated to the correct inflation pressure. Using the DIC, tyre pressure levels can be viewed. For additional information and details about the DIC operation and displays \( \diamond \) 81.

The low tyre pressure warning light may come on in cool weather when the vehicle is first started, and then turn off as the vehicle is driven. This could be an early indicator that the air pressure is getting low and must be inflated to the proper pressure. A label shows the size of the original equipment tyres and the correct inflation pressure for the tyres when they are cold \( \diamond \) 270. Also see tyre pressures \( \diamond \) 315.

The TPMS can warn about a low tyre pressure condition but it does not replace normal tyre maintenance.

**Note**

Tyre sealant materials are not all the same. A non-approved tyre sealant could damage the TPMS sensors. TPMS sensor damage caused by using an incorrect tyre sealant is not covered by the vehicle warranty. Always use only the GM-approved tyre sealant available through your dealer or included in the vehicle.

Factory-installed tyre repair kits use a GM-approved liquid tyre sealant. Using non-approved tyre sealants
Vehicle care

could damage the TPMS sensors. For information regarding the tyre repair kit and instructions 276.

TPMS malfunction light and message
The TPMS will not function properly if one or more of the TPMS sensors are missing or inoperable. When the system detects a malfunction, the low tyre warning light (=* flashes for about one minute and then stays on for the remainder of the ignition cycle. A DIC warning message also displays. The malfunction light and DIC warning message come on at each ignition cycle until the problem is corrected. Some of the conditions that can cause these to come on are:

■ One of the road tyres has been replaced with the spare tyre. The spare tyre does not have a TPMS sensor. The malfunction light and DIC message should go off after the road tyre is replaced and the sensor matching process is performed successfully. See "TPMS sensor matching process" later in this section.

■ The TPMS sensor matching process was not done or not completed successfully after rotating the tyres. The malfunction light and DIC message should go off after successfully completing the sensor matching process. See "TPMS sensor matching process" later in this section.

■ One or more TPMS sensors are missing or damaged. The malfunction light and DIC message should go off when the TPMS sensors are installed and the sensor matching process is performed successfully. See your dealer for service.

■ Replacement tyres or wheels do not match the original equipment tyres or wheels. Tyres and wheels other than those recommended could prevent the TPMS from functioning properly.

■ Operating electronic devices or being near facilities using radio wave frequencies similar to the TPMS could cause the TPMS sensors to malfunction.

If the TPMS is not functioning properly, it cannot detect or signal a low tyre condition. See your dealer for service if the malfunction light and DIC message come on and stay on.

TPMS sensor matching process
Each TPMS sensor has a unique identification code. The identification code needs to be matched to a new tyre/wheel position after rotating the tyres or replacing one or more of the TPMS sensors. The TPMS sensor matching process should also be performed after replacing a spare tyre with a road tyre containing the TPMS sensor. The malfunction light and the DIC message should go off at the next ignition cycle. The sensors are matched to the tyre/ wheel positions, using a TPMS relearn tool, in the following order: driver side front tyre, passenger side front tyre, passenger side rear tyre, and driver side rear. See your dealer for service.

There are two minutes to match the first tyre/wheel position, and five minutes overall to match all four tyre/
wheel positions. If it takes longer, the matching process stops and must be restarted.

The TPMS sensor matching process is:

1. Set the parking brake.
2. Turn the ignition to ON/RUN with the engine off.
3. Use the MENU button to select the Vehicle Information menu in the Driver Information Centre (DIC).
4. Use the thumbwheel to scroll to the Tyre Pressure Menu item screen.
5. Press the SET/CLR button to begin the sensor matching process. A message requesting acceptance of the process should display.
6. Press the SET/CLR button again to confirm the selection. The horn sounds twice to signal the receiver is in relearn mode and a message indicating that the matching process is active displays on the DIC screen.
7. Start with the driver side front tyre.
8. Place the relearn tool against the tyre sidewall, near the valve stem. Then press the button to activate the TPMS sensor. A horn chirp confirms that the sensor identification code has been matched to this tyre and wheel position.
9. Proceed to the passenger side front tyre, and repeat the procedure in step 8.
10. Proceed to the passenger side rear tyre, and repeat the procedure in step 8.
11. Proceed to the driver side rear tyre, and repeat the procedure in step 8. The horn sounds two times to indicate the sensor identification code has been matched to the driver side rear tyre, and the TPMS sensor matching process is no longer active. The message indicating that the matching process is active on the DIC display screen goes off.
12. Turn the ignition to LOCK/OFF.
13. Set all four tyres to the recommended air pressure level as indicated on the tyre pressure label 270.

**Tread depth**

Check tread depth at regular intervals.

Tyres should be replaced for safety reasons at a tread depth of 2-3 mm (4 mm for winter tyres).

For safety reasons it is recommended that the tread depth of the wheels on one axle should not vary by more than 2 mm.
The legally permissible minimum tread depth (1.6 mm) has been reached when the tread has worn down as far as one of the tread wear indicators (TWI). Their position is indicated by markings on the sidewall.

If there is more wear at the front than the rear, swap round front wheels and rear wheels periodically. Ensure that the direction of rotation of the wheels is the same as before.

Tyres age, even if they are not used. We recommend tyre replacement every 6 years.

### Changing tyre and wheel size

If tyres of a different size than those fitted at the factory are used, it may be necessary to reprogram the speedometer as well as the nominal tyre pressure and make other vehicle modifications.

After converting to a different tyre size, have the label with tyre pressures replaced.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Warning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Use of unsuitable tyres or wheels may lead to accidents and will invalidate the vehicle type approval.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Wheel covers

Wheel covers and tyres that are factory approved for the respective vehicle and comply with all of the relevant wheel and tyre combination requirements must be used.

If the wheel covers and tyres used are not factory approved, the tyres must not have a rim protection ridge. Wheel covers must not impair brake cooling.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Warning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Use of unsuitable tyres or wheel covers could lead to sudden pressure loss and thereby accidents.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Tyre chains


Tyre chains are only permitted on the front wheels.
Tyre chains are only permitted on tyres of size 205/60 R16.
Tyre chains must not be used on tyres of size 215/50 R 17, 215/60 R 16, 225/50 R17 and 225/55 R 16.
Always use fine mesh chains that add no more than 10 mm to the tyre tread and the inboard sides (including chain lock).

⚠️ Warning
Damage may lead to tyre blowout.

Tyre repair kit
Minor damage to the tyre tread can be repaired with the tyre repair kit.
Do not remove foreign bodies from the tyres.
Tyre damage exceeding 4 mm or that is at tyre's side wall near the rim cannot be repaired with the tyre repair kit.

⚠️ Warning
Do not drive faster than 80 km/h.
Do not use for a lengthy period.
Steering and handling may be affected.

If you have a flat tyre:
Apply the parking brake and engage first gear, reverse gear or P.

The tyre repair kit is in a compartment under the floor cover in the load compartment.

1. Take the tyre repair kit from the compartment.
2. Remove the compressor.
3. Remove the electrical connection cable and air hose from the stowage compartments on the underside of the compressor.
4. Screw the compressor air hose to the connection on the sealant bottle.

5. Fit the sealant bottle into the retainer on the compressor. Set the compressor near the tyre in such a way that the sealant bottle is upright.

6. Unscrew valve cap from defective tyre.

7. Screw the filler hose to the tyre valve.

8. The switch on the compressor must be set to \( \text{I} \).

9. Connect the compressor plug to the accessory socket at the rear of the console. To avoid discharging the battery, we recommend running the engine.

10. Set the rocker switch on the compressor to \( \text{I} \). The tyre is filled with sealant.

11. The compressor pressure gauge briefly indicates up to 6 bar whilst the sealant bottle is emptying (approx. 30 seconds). Then the pressure starts to drop.

12. All of the sealant is pumped into the tyre. Then the tyre is inflated.

13. The prescribed tyre pressure should be obtained within 10 minutes. Tyre pressure \( \geq 315 \). When the correct pressure is obtained, switch off the compressor.
If the prescribed tyre pressure is not obtained within 10 minutes, remove the tyre repair kit. Move the vehicle one tyre rotation. Reattach the tyre repair kit and continue the filling procedure for 10 minutes. If the prescribed tyre pressure is still not obtained, the tyre is too badly damaged. Seek the assistance of a workshop.

Drain excess tyre pressure with the button over the pressure indicator.

Do not run the compressor longer than 10 minutes.

14. Detach the tyre repair kit. Push catch on bracket to remove sealant bottle from bracket. Screw tyre inflation hose to free connection of sealant bottle. This prevents sealant from escaping. Stow tyre repair kit in load compartment.

15. Remove any excess sealant using a cloth.

16. Take the label indicating maximum permitted speed from the sealant bottle and affix in the driver's field of view.

17. Continue driving immediately so that sealant is evenly distributed in the tyre. After driving approx. 10 km (but no more than 10 minutes), stop and check tyre pressure. Screw compressor air hose directly onto tyre valve and compressor when doing this.

If tyre pressure is more than 1.3 bar, set it to the correct value. Repeat the procedure until there is no more loss of pressure.

If the tyre pressure has fallen below 1.3 bar, the vehicle must not be used. Seek the assistance of a workshop.

18. Stow away tyre repair kit in load compartment.
Note
The driving characteristics of the repaired tyre is severely affected, therefore have this tyre replaced. If unusual noise is heard or the compressor becomes hot, turn compressor off for at least 30 minutes.
The built-in safety valve opens at a pressure of 7 bar.
Note the expiry date of the kit. After this date its sealing capability is no longer guaranteed. Pay attention to storage information on sealant bottle.
Replace the used sealant bottle. Dispose of the bottle as prescribed by applicable laws.
The compressor and sealant can be used from approx. -30 °C.
The adapters supplied can be used to pump up other items e.g. footballs, air mattresses, inflatable dinghies etc. They are located on the underside of the compressor. To remove, screw on compressor air hose and withdraw adapter.

Wheel changing
Some vehicles are equipped with a tyre repair kit instead of a spare wheel ♦ 276.
Make the following preparations and observe the following information:
- Park the vehicle on a level, firm and non-skid surface. The front wheels must be in the straight-ahead position.
- Apply the parking brake and engage first gear, reverse gear or P.
- Remove the spare wheel ♦ 282.
- Never change more than one wheel at once.
- Use the jack only to change wheels in case of puncture, not for seasonal winter or summer tyre change.
- If the ground on which the vehicle is standing is soft, a solid board (max. 1 cm thick) should be placed under the jack.
- No people or animals may be in the vehicle when it is jacked-up.
- Never crawl under a jacked-up vehicle.
- Do not start the vehicle when it is raised on the jack.
- Clean wheel nuts and thread with a clean cloth before mounting the wheel.

⚠️ Warning
Do not grease wheel bolt, wheel nut and wheel nut cone.

1. Disengage wheel nut caps with a screwdriver and remove. Pull off
the wheel cover with the hook.

Vehicle tools 269.

Alloy wheels: Disengage wheel nut caps with a screwdriver and remove. To protect the wheel, place a soft cloth between the screwdriver and the alloy wheel.

2. Variant 1:

Install the wheel wrench ensuring that it locates securely and loosen each wheel nut by half a turn.

Variant 2:

Fold out the wheel wrench and install ensuring that it locates securely and loosen each wheel nut by half a turn.

3. Only sport model:

Place hand behind the edge of the cover on the sill panelling. Pull down and out to remove the cover. The cover is attached by a tether.

4. Ensure the jack is positioned correctly with the vehicle jacking points.
5. Variant 1:

Set the jack to the necessary height. Position it directly below the jacking point in a manner that prevents it from slipping.

Attach jack handle and with the jack correctly aligned rotate handle until wheel is clear of the ground.

Variant 2:

Set the jack to the necessary height. Position it directly below the jacking point in a manner that prevents it from slipping.

Attach wheel wrench and with the jack correctly aligned rotate wheel wrench until wheel is clear of the ground.

6. Unscrew the wheel nuts.

7. Change the wheel.

8. Screw on the wheel nuts.

9. Lower vehicle.

10. Install the wheel wrench ensuring that it locates securely and tighten each nut in a crosswise sequence. Tightening torque is 140 Nm.
11. Align the valve hole in the wheel cover with the tyre valve before installing.
   Install wheel nut caps.
12. Only sport model:
   Reinstall cover.
   Insert the two rear pins into the holes at the sill panelling and fold up the cover to engage.
13. Stow the replaced wheel 276 and the vehicle tools 269.
14. Check the tyre pressure of the installed tyre and also the wheel nut torque as soon as possible.

Have the defective tyre renewed or repaired.

**Spare wheel**
The spare wheel can be classified as a temporary spare wheel depending on the size compared to the other mounted wheels and country regulations.
The spare wheel has a steel rim.
Use of a spare wheel that is smaller than the other wheels or together with winter tyres could affect driveability. Have the defective tyre replaced as soon as possible.

The spare wheel is located in the load compartment beneath the floor covering. It is secured in the recess with a wing nut.
The spare wheel well is not designed for all permitted tyre sizes. If a wheel wider than the spare must be stowed in the spare wheel well after changing wheels, the floor cover can be placed on the projecting wheel.

**Temporary spare wheel**
Use of the temporary spare wheel could affect driveability. Have the defective tyre renewed or repaired as soon as possible.
Only mount one temporary spare wheel. Do not drive faster than 80 km/h. Take curves slowly. Do not use for a long period of time.
If your vehicle gets a flat tyre on the rear while towing another vehicle, mount the temporary spare wheel in the front and the full tyre in the rear.

Tyre chains 275.
**Directional tyres**
Fit directional tyres such that they roll in the direction of travel. The rolling direction is indicated by a symbol (e.g. an arrow) on the sidewall.
The following applies to tyres fitted opposing the rolling direction:
- Driveability may be affected. Have the defective tyre renewed or repaired as soon as possible.
- Drive particularly carefully on wet and snow-covered road surfaces.

**Jump starting**
Do not start with quick charger. A vehicle with a discharged battery can be started using jump leads and the battery of another vehicle.

**Warning**
Be extremely careful when starting with jump leads. Any deviation from the following instructions can lead to injuries or damage caused by battery explosion or damage to the electrical systems of both vehicles.

**Warning**
Avoid contact with eyes, skin, fabrics and painted surfaces. The fluid contains sulphuric acid which can cause injuries and damage in the event of direct contact.

- Never expose the battery to naked flames or sparks.
- A discharged battery can already freeze at temperatures of 0 °C. Defrost the frozen battery before connecting jump leads.
- Wear eye protection and protective clothing when handling a battery.
- Use a booster battery with the same voltage (12 volts). Its capacity (Ah) must not be much less than that of the discharged battery.
- Use jump leads with insulated terminals and a cross section of at least 16 mm\(^2\) (25 mm\(^2\) for diesel engines).
- Do not disconnect the discharged battery from the vehicle.
- Switch off all unnecessary electrical consumers.
- Do not lean over the battery during jump starting.
- Do not allow the terminals of one lead to touch those of the other lead.
The vehicles must not come into contact with each other during the jump starting process.

- Apply the parking brake, transmission in neutral, automatic transmission in P.
- Open the positive terminal protection caps of both batteries.

Lead connection order:

1. Connect the red lead to the positive terminal of the booster battery.
2. Connect the other end of the red lead to the positive terminal of the discharged battery.
3. Connect the black lead to the negative terminal of the booster battery.
4. Connect the other end of the black lead to a vehicle grounding point, such as the engine block or an engine mounting bolt. Connect as far away from the discharged battery as possible, however at least 60 cm.

Route the leads so that they cannot catch on rotating parts in the engine compartment.

To start the engine:

1. Start the engine of the vehicle providing the jump.
2. After 5 minutes, start the other engine. Start attempts should be made for no longer than 15 seconds at an interval of 1 minute.
3. Allow both engines to idle for approx. 3 minutes with the leads connected.
4. Switch on electrical consumers (e.g. headlights, heated rear window) of the vehicle receiving the jump start.
5. Reverse above sequence exactly when removing leads.
Towing

Towing the vehicle

If you need to have your vehicle towed, please use our service network or professional towing company.

The best method is to have the vehicle transported using a recovery vehicle.

If towing by 2 wheels, lift the front driving wheels and tow with the front tyres locked.

Please observe the following procedures when towing a vehicle:

■ No passenger should remain in the vehicle being towed.
■ Release the parking brake of the towed vehicle and place the transmission gear in neutral.
■ Switch on the emergency warning lights.
■ Keep the speed limits.

If it is not possible to have your vehicle towed by a recovery vehicle, proceed as follows:

Disengage cap by pressing the mark and remove the cap.
The towing eye is stowed with the vehicle tools 269.

Screw in the towing eye as far as it will go until it stops in a horizontal position.

Attach a tow rope – or better still a tow rod – to the towing eye.

The towing eye must only be used for towing and not for recovering the vehicle.

Switch on ignition to release steering column lock and to permit operation of brake lights, horn and windscreen wipers.

Transmission in neutral.

Switch on the hazard warning flashers on both vehicles.

**Caution**

Drive steady and slowly. Harsh driving can damage the vehicle.

When the engine is not running, considerably more force is needed to brake and steer.

To prevent the entry of exhaust fumes from the towing vehicle, switch on the air recirculation and close the windows.

Vehicles with automatic transmission:
Do not tow the vehicle using tow eye. Towing with a tow rope could cause severe automatic transmission damage. When towing vehicle with automatic transmission, use flat bed or wheel lift equipment.

Vehicle with manual transmission:
The vehicle must be towed facing forwards, not faster than 80 km/h. In all other cases and when the transmission is defective, the front axle must be raised off the ground.

Seek the assistance of a workshop. After towing, unscrew the towing eye. Insert cap below and close cap. The best method is to have the vehicle transported using a recovery vehicle.

**Towing another vehicle**

Disengage cap by pressing the mark and remove the cap.

The towing eye is stowed with the vehicle tools 269.
Screw in the towing eye as far as it will go until it stops in a horizontal position.
The lashing eye at the rear underneath the vehicle must never be used as a towing eye.
Attach a tow rope – or better still a tow rod – to the towing eye.
The towing eye must only be used for towing and not for recovering a vehicle.

Caution
Drive steady and slowly. Harsh driving can damage the vehicle.
After towing, unscrew the towing eye. Insert cap below and engage cap.

Appearance care
Exterior care
Locks
The locks are lubricated at the factory using a high quality lock cylinder grease. Use de-icing agent only when absolutely necessary, as this has a degreasing effect and impairs lock function. After using de-icing agent, have the locks regreased by a workshop.

Washing
The paintwork of your vehicle is exposed to environmental influences. Wash and wax your vehicle regularly. When using automatic vehicle washes, select a programme that includes waxing.
Outside pollutants such as bird droppings, dead insects, tree resin and pollen should be cleaned from the vehicle immediately as they can cause paint damage.
If using a vehicle wash, comply with the vehicle wash manufacturer's instructions. The windscreen wipers and rear window wiper must be switched off. Lock the vehicle so that the fuel filler flap cannot be opened. Remove antenna and external accessories such as roof racks etc. If you wash your vehicle by hand, make sure that the insides of the wheel housings are also thoroughly rinsed out.

Clean edges and folds on opened doors and the bonnet as well as the areas they cover.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Caution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Always use a cleaning agent with a pH value of 4 to 9.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do not use cleaning agents on hot surfaces.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Have the door hinges of all doors greased by a workshop.

Do not clean the engine compartment with a steam-jet or high-pressure jet cleaner.

Thoroughly rinse and leather-off the vehicle. Rinse leather frequently. Use separate leathers for painted and glass surfaces: remnants of wax on the windows will impair vision.

Do not use hard objects to remove spots of tar. Use tar removal spray on painted surfaces.

**Exterior lights**

Headlight and other light covers are made of plastic. Do not use any abrasive or caustic agents, do not use an ice scraper, and do not clean them dry.

**Polishing and waxing**

Wax the vehicle regularly (at the latest when water no longer beads). Otherwise, the paintwork will dry out.

Polishing is necessary only if the paint has become dull or if solid deposits have become attached to it.

Paintwork polish with silicone forms a protective film, making waxing unnecessary.

Plastic body parts must not be treated with wax or polishing agents.

**Windows and windscreen wiper blades**

Use a soft lint-free cloth or chamois leather together with window cleaner and insect remover.

When cleaning the rear window from inside, always wipe in parallel to the heating element to prevent damage.

For mechanical removal of ice, use a sharp-edged ice scraper. Press the scraper firmly against the glass so that no dirt can get under it and scratch the glass.

Clean smearing wiper blades with a soft cloth and window cleaner.

**Sunroof**

Never clean with solvents or abrasive agents, fuels, aggressive media (e.g. paint cleaner, acetone-containing solutions etc.), acidic or highly alkaline media or abrasive pads. Do not apply wax or polishing agents to the middle part of the sunroof.

**Wheels and tyres**

Do not use high-pressure jet cleaners.
Clean rims with a pH-neutral wheel cleaner.
Rims are painted and can be treated with the same agents as the body.

**Paintwork damage**
Rectify minor paintwork damage with a touch-up pen before rust forms.
Have more extensive damage or rust areas repaired by a workshop.

**Underbody**
Some areas of the vehicle underbody have a PVC undercoating while other critical areas have a durable protective wax coating.
After the underbody is washed, check the underbody and have it waxed if necessary.
Bitumen/rubber materials could damage the PVC coating. Have underbody work carried out by a workshop.
Before and after winter, wash the underbody and have the protective wax coating checked.

---

### Interior care

#### Interior and upholstery
Only clean the vehicle interior, including the instrument panel fascia and panelling, with a dry cloth or interior cleaner.
Clean the leather upholstery with clear water and a soft cloth. In case of heavy soiling, use leather care.
The instrument cluster and the displays should only be cleaned using a soft damp cloth. If necessary use a weak soap solution.
Clean fabric upholstery with a vacuum cleaner and brush. Remove stains with an upholstery cleaner.
Clothing fabrics may not be colourfast. This could cause visible discolorations, especially on light-coloured upholstery. Removable stains and discolorations should be cleaned as soon as possible.
Clean seat belts with lukewarm water or interior cleaner.

---

### Caution

Close Velcro fasteners as open Velcro fasteners on clothing could damage seat upholstery.
The same applies to clothing with sharp-edged objects, like zips or belts or studded jeans.

Clean up the dust on IP/door's mesh fabric with a vacuum cleaner.
Remove stains with interior cleaner.

#### Plastic and rubber parts
Plastic and rubber parts can be cleaned with the same cleaner as used to clean the body. Use interior cleaner if necessary. Do not use any other agent. Avoid solvents and petrol in particular. Do not use high-pressure jet cleaners.
## Service and maintenance

**General information**

In order to ensure economical and safe vehicle operation and to maintain the value of your vehicle, it is of vital importance that all maintenance work is carried out at the proper intervals as specified.

**Confirmations**

Confirmation of service is recorded in the Service and Warranty Booklet. The date and mileage is completed with the stamp and signature of the servicing workshop.

Make sure that the Service and Warranty Booklet is completed correctly as continuous proof of service is essential if any warranty or goodwill claims are to be met, and is also a benefit when selling the vehicle.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Engine oil life monitoring for diesel engines</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The service intervals are based on several parameters depending on usage and are calculated using these parameters. The engine oil life monitoring lets you know when to change the engine oil.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Scheduled maintenance

Service schedules

Maintenance interval

Every 1 year / 15000 km (whichever occurs first)

Maintenance I: Use Maintenance I for the first service or if Maintenance II was performed previously.

Maintenance II: Use Maintenance II if the previous service performed was Maintenance I.

For vehicles equipped with an oil life monitoring system:

If code number 82 is displayed in the Driver Information Centre (DIC) and the previous maintenance has been carried out at least 10 months before, then the relevant maintenance should also be carried out.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Service operation</th>
<th>Maintenance I</th>
<th>Maintenance II</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Replace engine oil and filter.(^1)</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>R</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inspect for any leaks or damage.(^2)</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inspect engine air filter.(^3)</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inspect tyres for inflation pressures and wear.</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>I</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^1\) If driving under severe conditions: short distance driving, extensive idling or driving in dusty condition, engine oil and the filter may require replacement more often. For diesel engines, replace when code number 82 is displayed in the DIC.

\(^2\) Fluid loss in any vehicle system could indicate a problem. The system should be inspected and repaired and the fluid level checked. Add fluid if needed.

\(^3\) If driving regularly in dusty conditions, inspect the filter more frequently. The filter may require replacement more often.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Service operation</th>
<th>Maintenance I</th>
<th>Maintenance II</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Inspect brake system.\textsuperscript{4)}</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inspect engine coolant and windshield washer fluid levels and add fluid as needed.</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inspect suspension and steering components.\textsuperscript{5)}</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inspect wiper blades and the operation of exterior lighting.\textsuperscript{6)}</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inspect drive belts.</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perform any required additional services - see applicable section.</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Check for field actions.</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Replace brake fluid.\textsuperscript{7)}</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>R</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inspect engine cooling system.\textsuperscript{8)}</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>I</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\textsuperscript{4)} Visually inspect brake lines and hoses for binding, leaks, cracks, chafing, etc. Inspect disc brake pads for wear and discs for surface condition. Inspect drum brake linings/shoes for wear or cracks. Inspect other brake parts, including drums, wheel cylinders, calipers, parking brake, etc.

\textsuperscript{5)} Visually inspect front and rear suspension and steering system for damage, loose or missing parts or signs of wear. Inspect power steering components for binding, cracks, chafing, etc.

\textsuperscript{6)} Inspect wiper blades for wear, cracking, or contamination. Clean the windshield and wiper blades, if contaminated. Replace wiper blades that are worn or damaged.

\textsuperscript{7)} If driving under severe conditions: driving in hilly or mountainous terrain, or towing a trailer frequently, brake fluid may require replacement more often.

\textsuperscript{8)} Visually inspect hoses and have them replaced if they are cracked, swollen, or deteriorated. Inspect all pipes, fittings, and clamps; replace with genuine parts if needed. To help ensure correct operation, a pressure test of the cooling system and pressure cap and cleaning the outside of the radiator and air conditioning condenser is recommended.
## Service and maintenance

### Service operation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Service operation</th>
<th>Maintenance I</th>
<th>Maintenance II</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Inspect restraint system components.</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inspect powertrain and driveline components.</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lubricate body components.</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>I</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

I: Inspect these items and their related parts. If necessary, correct, clean, replenish, adjust or replace.
R: Replace or change.

### Service operation & Interval

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Service operation</th>
<th>Interval</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Replace pollen filter.</td>
<td>Every 45000 km / 2 years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Replace air filter.</td>
<td>Every 60000 km / 4 years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Replace spark plugs.</td>
<td>LXT: every 30000 km / 2 years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>LUJ, LUV, LDD, LDE and 2H0: every 60000 km / 4 years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Replace ignition cable.</td>
<td>LXT: every 45000 km / 3 years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Replace diesel fuel filter.</td>
<td>Every 60000 km / 2 years</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

9) Make sure the safety belt reminder light and safety belt assemblies are working correctly. Look for any other loose or damaged safety belt system parts. If you see anything that might keep a safety belt system from doing its job, have it repaired. Ensure any torn or frayed safety belts are replaced.

10) Lubricate all key lock cylinders, door hinges and latches, hood hinges and latches, and trunk lid hinges and latches. More frequent lubrication may be required when exposed to a corrosive environment. Applying silicone grease on weatherstrips with a clean cloth will make them last longer, seal better, and not stick or squeak.
### Service and maintenance

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Service operation</th>
<th>Interval</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Replace engine coolant.</td>
<td>Every 240000 km / 5 years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Replace automatic transmission oil.</td>
<td>Every 150000 km / 10 years for normal conditions, every 75000 km / 5 years for severe conditions</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Replace auxiliary belt.           | LDE and 2H0 with stretch belt: every 90000 km / 10 years  
                                         LKR, LUD: every 150000 km / 10 years |
| Replace timing belt.              | LXT: every 60000 km / 4 years                 
                                         LKR, LUD, LUV, LDE and 2H0: every 150000 km / 10 years |
| Inspect valve clearance, adjust if required. | LKR, LUD, LDE and 2H0: every 150000 km / 10 years |
| Replace timing chain.             | LUJ, LDD and LNP: every 240000 km / 10 years  |
## General maintenance items

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Service operation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>All</td>
<td>Check all systems for interference or binding and for damaged or missing parts. Replace parts as needed. Replace any components that has excessive wear.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Automatic transmission   | Change automatic transmission fluid and filter if the vehicle is mainly driven under one or more of these conditions:  
In heavy city traffic where the outside temperature regularly reaches 32 °C or higher.  
In hilly or mountainous terrain.  
When doing frequent trailer towing.  
Uses such as found in taxi, police, or delivery service. |
| Belts                    | Visually inspect belt for fraying, excessive cracks, or obvious damage. Replace belt if necessary.                                                    |
| Tyre condition & inflation pressure | Tyre condition should be inspected before driving and tyre pressure should be checked each time you fill your fuel tank or at least once a month using a tyre pressure gauge. |
| Wheel alignment          | If necessary, rotate and balance wheels.                                                                                                          |
Additional servicing

Extreme operating conditions

Extreme operating conditions are given when at least one of the following occurs frequently:

- Cold starts
- Stop and go
- Trailer towing
- Gradients and/or high altitudes
- Poor road surfaces
- Sand and dust
- Extreme temperature fluctuations

Police vehicles, taxis and driving school vehicles are also classified as operating under extreme conditions.

Under extreme operating conditions, it may be necessary to have certain scheduled service work done more frequently than the scheduled intervals.

Seek technical advice on the servicing requirements dependent on the specific operating conditions.

Recommended fluids, lubricants and parts

Recommended fluids and lubricants

Only use products that meet the recommended specifications. Damage resulting from the use of products not in line with these specifications will not be covered by the warranty.

⚠️ Warning

Operating materials are hazardous and could be poisonous. Handle with care. Pay attention to information given on the containers.

Engine oil

Engine oil is identified by its quality and its viscosity. Quality is more important than viscosity when selecting which engine oil to use. The oil quality ensures e.g. engine cleanliness, wear protection and oil aging control, whereas viscosity grade gives information on the oil's thickness over a temperature range.

Engine oil quality

dexos 2      Petrol and diesel engines
ACEA A3/B3,  LXT only (if engine oil approved by dexos is not available)
ACEA A3/B4,
ACEA C3,
API SM,
API SN

Selecting the right engine oil

Selecting the right engine oil depends on the proper oil specification and viscosity grade.
Use and ask for engine oils with the dexos certification mark. Oils meeting the requirements of your vehicle should have the dexos certification mark on the container. This certification mark indicates that the oil has been approved to the dexos specification.

Your vehicle was filled at the factory with dexos approved engine oil. Use only engine oil that is approved to the dexos specification or an equivalent engine oil of the appropriate viscosity grade.

If you are unsure whether your oil is approved to the dexos specification, ask your service provider.

Use of substitute engine oils if dexos is unavailable: In the event that dexos approved engine oil is not available at an oil change or for maintaining proper oil level, you may use substitute engine oil of the qualities mentioned above. Use of oils that do not meet the dexos specification, however, may result in reduced performance or engine damage under certain circumstances.

Topping up engine oil
Engine oils of different manufacturers and brands can be mixed as long as they comply with the required engine oil (quality and viscosity).

If engine oil of the required quality is not available, a maximum of 1 litre of ACEA A3/B4 or A3/B3 grade may be used (only once between each oil change). The viscosity should be of the correct rating.

Use of engine oil with only ACEA A1/B1 or only A5/B5 quality is prohibited, since it can cause long-term engine damage under certain operating conditions.

Engine oil additives
The use of engine oil additives could cause damage and invalidate the warranty.

Engine oil viscosity grades

SAE 5W-30 is the best viscosity grade for your vehicle. Do not use other viscosity grade oils such as SAE 10W-30, 10W-40 or 20W-50.

Cold temperature operation:
If in an area of extreme cold, where the temperature falls below -25°C, an SAE 0W-30 oil should be used. An oil of this viscosity grade will provide easier cold starting for the engine at extremely low temperatures. When selecting an oil of the appropriate
viscosity grade be sure to always select an oil that meets the dexos specification.

- Down to -25°C and below: 0W-30, 0W-40.
- Down to -25°C: 5W-30, 5W-40.
- Down to -20°C: 10W-30, 10W-40 (only for LXT).
- Down to -15°C: 15W-30, 15W-40 (only for LXT).

The SAE viscosity grade gives information of the thickness of the oil. Multigrade oil is indicated by two figures.

The first figure, followed by a W, indicates the low temperature viscosity and the second figure the high temperature viscosity.

**Coolant and antifreeze**

Use only silicate-free long life coolant (LLC) antifreeze.

The system is factory filled with coolant designed for excellent corrosion protection and frost protection down to approx. -27 °C. This concentration should be maintained all year round. The use of additional coolant additives that intend to give additional corrosion protection or seal against minor leaks can cause function problems. Liability for consequences resulting from the use of additional coolant additives will be rejected.

**Brake and clutch fluid**

Only use DOT4 brake fluid.

Over time, brake fluid absorbs moisture which will reduce braking effectiveness. The brake fluid should therefore be replaced at the specified interval.

Brake fluid should be stored in a sealed container to avoid water absorption.

Ensure brake fluid does not become contaminated.

**Caution**

Using low quality brake fluid may cause corrosion to internal components of the brake system, which may result in decreased brake system performance, which is a safety concern. Always use high quality brake fluid approved for your vehicle model. We recommend GM genuine brake fluid.
Vehicle identification

Vehicle Identification Number

The Vehicle Identification Number is located in the vehicle floor on the right-hand side under a cover between the front door and seat.

The Vehicle Identification Number is also visible through the windscreen.
Identification plate

Variant 1:
The identification plate is located on the front left door frame.

Variant 2:
The identification plate is located in the engine compartment.

Information on identification label:
1 = Vehicle Identification Number
2 = Type approval number
3 = Manufacturer
4 = Permissible gross vehicle weight rating (in kg)
5 = Permissible gross train weight (in kg)
6 = Maximum permissible front axle load (in kg)
7 = Maximum permissible rear axle load (in kg)
8 = Vehicle-specific or country specific data

The combined total of front and rear axle loads must not exceed the permissible gross vehicle weight. For example, if the front axle is bearing its maximum permissible load, the rear axle can only bear a load that is equal to the gross vehicle weight minus the front axle load.

The technical data is determined in accordance with European Community standards. We reserve the right to make modifications.
Specifications in the vehicle documents always have priority over those given in this manual.

**Engine identification**

The technical data tables show the engine identifier code. Engine data 302.

To identify the respective engine, refer to the engine power in the EEC Certificate of Conformity provided with your vehicle or other national registration documents.
## Vehicle data

### Engine data

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sales designation</th>
<th>1.4 T</th>
<th>1.4</th>
<th>1.6 D</th>
<th>1.6 D</th>
<th>1.8 D</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Engine identifier code</td>
<td>LUJ</td>
<td>LDD</td>
<td>LXT</td>
<td>LDE</td>
<td>2H0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of cylinders</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Piston displacement [cm³]</td>
<td>1364</td>
<td>–¹)</td>
<td>1598</td>
<td>1598</td>
<td>1796</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engine power [kW] at rpm</td>
<td>103</td>
<td>–¹)</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>86</td>
<td>104</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>at rpm</td>
<td>6000</td>
<td>–¹)</td>
<td>6000</td>
<td>6200</td>
<td>6200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Torque [Nm] at rpm</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>–¹)</td>
<td>150</td>
<td>157</td>
<td>176</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>at rpm</td>
<td>1850-4900</td>
<td>–¹)</td>
<td>4200</td>
<td>4000</td>
<td>3800</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuel type</td>
<td>Petrol</td>
<td>Petrol</td>
<td>Petrol</td>
<td>Petrol</td>
<td>Petrol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Octane rating RON recommended</td>
<td>95</td>
<td>–¹)</td>
<td>91</td>
<td>95</td>
<td>95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>possible</td>
<td>91</td>
<td>–¹)</td>
<td>87</td>
<td>91</td>
<td>91</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

¹) Value was not available at time of printing.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sales designation</th>
<th>1.7</th>
<th>1.7 Dsl</th>
<th>2.0 Dsl</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Engine identifier code</td>
<td>LKR</td>
<td>LUD</td>
<td>LNP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of cylinders</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Piston displacement [cm³]</td>
<td>1686</td>
<td>1686</td>
<td>1998</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engine power [kW]</td>
<td>81</td>
<td>96</td>
<td>120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>at rpm</td>
<td>4000</td>
<td>4000</td>
<td>3800</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Torque [Nm]</td>
<td>280</td>
<td>300</td>
<td>360</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>at rpm</td>
<td>1750-2500</td>
<td>2000-2500</td>
<td>2000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuel type</td>
<td>Diesel</td>
<td>Diesel</td>
<td>Diesel</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Performance

### 4-doors

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Engine</th>
<th>LDD</th>
<th>LXT</th>
<th>LDE</th>
<th>2H0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Top speed(^2) [km/h]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual transmission</td>
<td>–(^3)</td>
<td>185</td>
<td>190</td>
<td>200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Automatic transmission</td>
<td></td>
<td>177</td>
<td>185</td>
<td>195</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Engine</th>
<th>LKR</th>
<th>LUD</th>
<th>LNP</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Top speed(^2) [km/h]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual transmission</td>
<td>189</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>205</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Automatic transmission</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>209</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^2\) The maximum speed indicated is achievable at kerb weight (without driver) plus 200 kg payload. Optional equipment could reduce the specified maximum speed of the vehicle.

\(^3\) Value was not available at time of printing.
### 5-doors hatchback

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Engine</th>
<th>LUJ</th>
<th>LDD</th>
<th>LXT</th>
<th>LDE</th>
<th>2H0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Top speed</strong> (^2) [km/h]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual transmission</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>–(^3)</td>
<td>3(^3)</td>
<td>190</td>
<td>200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Automatic transmission</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–(^3)</td>
<td>185</td>
<td>195</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Engine</th>
<th>LKR</th>
<th>LUD</th>
<th>LNP</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Top speed</strong> (^2) [km/h]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual transmission</td>
<td>180</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>205</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Automatic transmission</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>209</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^2\) The maximum speed indicated is achievable at kerb weight (without driver) plus 200 kg payload. Optional equipment could reduce the specified maximum speed of the vehicle.

\(^3\) Value was not available at time of printing.
### Technical data

#### Station wagon

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Engine</th>
<th>LUJ</th>
<th>LDD</th>
<th>LDE</th>
<th>2H0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Steering</td>
<td>HPS/EPS</td>
<td>HPS/EPS</td>
<td>HPS/EPS</td>
<td>HPS/EPS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Top speed[^2] [km/h]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Automatic transmission</td>
<td>–/-</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–/-</td>
<td>192/200</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Engine</th>
<th>LKR</th>
<th>LUD</th>
<th>LNP</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Steering</td>
<td>HPS/EPS</td>
<td>HPS/EPS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Top speed[^2] [km/h]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual transmission</td>
<td>–/185</td>
<td>–/200</td>
<td>200/210</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Automatic transmission</td>
<td>–/-</td>
<td>–/-</td>
<td>198/207</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

[^4]: HPS: Hydraulic power steering; EPS: Electric power steering

[^2]: The maximum speed indicated is achievable at kerb weight (without driver) plus 200 kg payload. Optional equipment could reduce the specified maximum speed of the vehicle.

[^3]: Value was not available at time of printing.
## Vehicle weight

**Kerb weight, basic model without any optional equipment**
The kerb weight includes weights for the driver (68 kg), luggage (7 kg) and all fluids (tank 90 % full).

### 4-doors

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Engine</th>
<th>Manual transmission</th>
<th>Automatic transmission</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>without/with air conditioning [kg]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LDD</td>
<td></td>
<td>$^5)/^{5)}$</td>
<td>$^5)/^{5)}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LXT</td>
<td></td>
<td>1360/1374</td>
<td>1385/1399</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LDE</td>
<td></td>
<td>1380/1394</td>
<td>1413/1427</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2H0</td>
<td></td>
<td>1385/1399</td>
<td>1415/1429</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LKR</td>
<td></td>
<td>1500/1514</td>
<td>$^5)/^{5)}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LUD</td>
<td></td>
<td>1500/1514</td>
<td>$^5)/^{5)}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LNP</td>
<td></td>
<td>1535/1549</td>
<td>1565/1579</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

$^5)$ Value was not available at time of printing.
### Technical data

#### 5-doors hatchback

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Engine</th>
<th>Manual transmission</th>
<th>Automatic transmission</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>LUJ</td>
<td>1394/1408</td>
<td>–/–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LDD</td>
<td>–/–</td>
<td>–/–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LXT</td>
<td>–/–</td>
<td>–/–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LDE</td>
<td>1385/1399</td>
<td>1418/1432</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2H0</td>
<td>1390/1404</td>
<td>1420/1434</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LKR</td>
<td>1500/1514</td>
<td>–/–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LUD</td>
<td>1504/1518</td>
<td>–/–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LNP</td>
<td>1555/1569</td>
<td>1585/1599</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5) Value was not available at time of printing.
### Station wagon

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>without/with air conditioning [kg]</th>
<th>Engine</th>
<th>Manual transmission</th>
<th>Automatic transmission</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>LUJ</td>
<td>1480/1494</td>
<td>–/–</td>
<td>–/–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LDD</td>
<td>–5)/–5)</td>
<td>–/–</td>
<td>–/–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LDE</td>
<td>1435/1449</td>
<td>–/–</td>
<td>–/–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2H0</td>
<td>1445/1459</td>
<td>1475/1489</td>
<td>–/–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LKR</td>
<td>1500/1514</td>
<td>–/–</td>
<td>–/–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LUD</td>
<td>1550/1564</td>
<td>–/–</td>
<td>–/–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LNP</td>
<td>1595/1609</td>
<td>1614/1628</td>
<td>–/–</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Kerb weight, basic model with all optional equipment
The kerb weight includes weights for the driver (68 kg), luggage (7 kg) and all fluids (tank 90 % full).

5) Value was not available at time of printing.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Engine</th>
<th>Manual transmission</th>
<th>Automatic transmission</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>LDD</td>
<td>–/–</td>
<td>–/–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LXT</td>
<td>1438/1452</td>
<td>1463/1477</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LDE</td>
<td>1475/1489</td>
<td>1488/1502</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2H0</td>
<td>1480/1494</td>
<td>1510/1524</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LKR</td>
<td>1595/1609</td>
<td>–/–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LUD</td>
<td>1595/1609</td>
<td>–/–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LNP</td>
<td>1630/1644</td>
<td>1660/1674</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5) Value was not available at time of printing.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>without/with air conditioning [kg]</th>
<th>Engine</th>
<th>Manual transmission</th>
<th>Automatic transmission</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>LUJ</td>
<td>1464/1478</td>
<td>–/–</td>
<td>–/–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LDD</td>
<td>≥5)/≥5)</td>
<td>–/–</td>
<td>–/–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LXT</td>
<td>≥5)/≥5)</td>
<td>–5)/–5)</td>
<td>–5)/–5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LDE</td>
<td>1480/1494</td>
<td>1493/1507</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2H0</td>
<td>1485/1499</td>
<td>1515/1529</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LKR</td>
<td>1595/1609</td>
<td>–/–</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LUD</td>
<td>1599/1613</td>
<td>–/–</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LNP</td>
<td>1650/1664</td>
<td>1680/1694</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5) Value was not available at time of printing.
### Technical data

#### Station wagon

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Engine</th>
<th>Manual transmission</th>
<th>Automatic transmission</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>without/with air conditioning [kg]</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LUJ</td>
<td>1550/1564</td>
<td>–/–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LDD</td>
<td>–/–</td>
<td>–/–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LDE</td>
<td>1505/1519</td>
<td>–/–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2H0</td>
<td>1515/1529</td>
<td>1545/1559</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LKR</td>
<td>1620/1634</td>
<td>–/–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LUD</td>
<td>1620/1634</td>
<td>–/–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LNP</td>
<td>1665/1679</td>
<td>1684/1698</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Vehicle dimensions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>4-doors</th>
<th>5-doors hatchback</th>
<th>Station wagon</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Length [mm]</strong></td>
<td>4603</td>
<td>4514</td>
<td>4681</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Width without exterior mirrors [mm]</strong></td>
<td>1797</td>
<td>1797</td>
<td>1797</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Width with two exterior mirrors [mm]</strong></td>
<td>2067</td>
<td>2067</td>
<td>2067</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Height (without antenna) [mm]</strong></td>
<td>1477</td>
<td>1477</td>
<td>1521</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Length of load compartment floor [mm]</strong></td>
<td>1014</td>
<td>908</td>
<td>1024</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5) Value was not available at time of printing.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>4-doors</th>
<th>5-doors hatchback</th>
<th>Station wagon</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Load compartment width [mm]</td>
<td>1010</td>
<td>1026</td>
<td>1356</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Load compartment height [mm]</td>
<td>512</td>
<td>448</td>
<td>405</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wheelbase [mm]</td>
<td>2685</td>
<td>2685</td>
<td>2685</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Turning circle diameter [m]</td>
<td>10.9</td>
<td>10.9</td>
<td>10.9</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Capacities

### Engine oil

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Engine</th>
<th>LUJ</th>
<th>LDD</th>
<th>LXT</th>
<th>LDE</th>
<th>2H0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>including Filter [l]</td>
<td>4.0</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>3.75</td>
<td>4.5</td>
<td>4.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>between MIN and MAX [l]</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>1.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Engine</th>
<th>LKR</th>
<th>LUD</th>
<th>LNP</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>including Filter [l]</td>
<td>4.0</td>
<td>5.4</td>
<td>5.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>between MIN and MAX [l]</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>1.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Fuel tank

Petrol/diesel, nominal capacity [l] 60

---

6) Value was not available at time of printing.
## Tyre pressures

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Engine</th>
<th>Tyres</th>
<th>front [kPa/bar] ([psi])&lt;sup&gt;7&lt;/sup&gt;</th>
<th>rear [kPa/bar] ([psi])&lt;sup&gt;7&lt;/sup&gt;</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>LXT</td>
<td>205/60 R16</td>
<td>220/2.2 (32)</td>
<td>220/2.2 (32)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LDE, 2H0</td>
<td>205/60 R16, 215/50 R17, 215/60 R16, 205/65 R15, 225/50 R17</td>
<td>220/2.2 (32)</td>
<td>220/2.2 (32)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LUJ, LUD, LNP</td>
<td>205/60 R16, 215/60 R16, 225/50 R17, 215/50 R17</td>
<td>220/2.2 (32)</td>
<td>220/2.2 (32)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LDD</td>
<td>205/60 R16, 215/50 R17</td>
<td>220/2.2 (32)</td>
<td>220/2.2 (32)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LKR</td>
<td>205/60 R16,</td>
<td>220/2.2 (32)</td>
<td>220/2.2 (32)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<sup>7</sup> ECO pressure: 300/3.0 (44) [kPa/bar] ([psi]).
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Engine</th>
<th>Tyres</th>
<th>front [kPa/bar] ([psi]) (^7)</th>
<th>rear  [kPa/bar] ([psi]) (^7)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>225/50 R17</td>
<td>All</td>
<td>420/4.2 (61)</td>
<td>420/4.2 (61)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All</td>
<td>Temporary spare wheel</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^7\) ECO pressure: 300/3.0 (44) [kPa/bar] ([psi]).
Customer information

Declaration of conformity
This vehicle has systems that transmit and/or receive radio waves subject to Directive 1999/5/EC. These systems are in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC. Copies of the original Declarations of Conformity can be obtained on our website.

Vehicle data recording and privacy
Event data recorders

Data storage modules in the vehicle
A large number of electronic components of your vehicle contain data storage modules temporarily or permanently storing technical data about the condition of the vehicle, events and errors. In general, this technical information documents the condition of parts, modules, systems or the environment:

- Operating conditions of system components (e.g. filling levels)
- Status messages of the vehicle and its single components (e.g. number of wheel revolutions / rotational speed, deceleration, lateral acceleration)
- Dysfunctions and defects in important system components
- Vehicle reactions in particular driving situations (e.g. inflation of an airbag, activation of the stability regulation system)
- Environmental conditions (e.g. temperature)

These data are exclusively technical and help identifying and correcting errors as well as optimizing vehicle functions.

Motion profiles indicating travelled routes cannot be created with these data.

If services are used (e.g. repair works, service processes, warranty cases, quality assurance), employees of the service network (manufacturer included) are able to read out this technical information from the event and error data storage modules applying special diagnostic devices. If required, you will receive further information at these workshops. After an error has been corrected, the data are deleted from the error storage module or they are constantly overwritten.

When using the vehicle, situations may occur in which these technical data related to other information (accident report, damages on the vehicle, witness statements etc.) may be associated with a specific person - possibly, with the assistance of an expert.

Additional functions contractually agreed upon with the client (e.g. vehicle location in emergency cases) allow the transmission of particular vehicle data from the vehicle.

Radio Frequency Identification (RFID)

RFID technology is used in some vehicles for functions such as tyre pressure monitoring and ignition system security. It is also used in connection with conveniences such as key fobs for remote door locking/unlocking and starting, and in-vehicle transmitters for garage door openers. RFID technology in Chevrolet vehicles does not use or record personal information or link with any other Chevrolet system containing personal information.
## Index

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Accessories and vehicle modifications</td>
<td>240</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Activating CD player</td>
<td>141</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Activating speech recognition</td>
<td>193</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Activating the navigation system</td>
<td>156</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Activating the radio</td>
<td>128</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Additional servicing</td>
<td>296</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Address book</td>
<td>165</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Address input</td>
<td>165</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adjustable air vents</td>
<td>213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Airbag and belt tensioners</td>
<td>76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Airbag deactivation</td>
<td>49, 77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Airbag system</td>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Air conditioning regular operation</td>
<td>214</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Air conditioning system</td>
<td>207</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Air intake</td>
<td>214</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Air quality sensor</td>
<td>209</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Air vents</td>
<td>213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antilock brake system</td>
<td>227</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antilock brake system (ABS)</td>
<td>77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anti-theft alarm system</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anti-theft locking system</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Appearance care</td>
<td>287</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Apply footbrake</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Armrest</td>
<td>40, 41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Armrest storage</td>
<td>58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Automatic anti-dazzle</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Automatic light control</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Automatic transmission</td>
<td>224</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Autostore lists</td>
<td>129</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auxiliary heater</td>
<td>213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AUX input socket</td>
<td>145</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BACK button</td>
<td>117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Basic operation</td>
<td>117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Battery discharge protection</td>
<td>106</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bluetooth</td>
<td>198</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bluetooth connection</td>
<td>199</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bluetooth music setup</td>
<td>150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bonnet</td>
<td>241</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bonnet open</td>
<td>81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brake and clutch fluid</td>
<td>296</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brake and clutch system</td>
<td>77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brake assist</td>
<td>228</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brake fluid</td>
<td>252</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brakes</td>
<td>227, 251</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Breakdown</td>
<td>285</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bulb replacement</td>
<td>255</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Capacities</td>
<td>314</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Catalytic converter</td>
<td>223</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CD player</td>
<td>Engine coolant temperature</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>----------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>activating</td>
<td>gauge ........................................</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>important information</td>
<td>Engine data</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>usage</td>
<td>Engine exhaust</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Central locking system</td>
<td>Engine identification</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Changing tyre and wheel size</td>
<td>Engine oil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Charging system</td>
<td>Engine oil pressure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Child locks</td>
<td>Enhanced Other Networks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Child restraint installation</td>
<td>Entry lighting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>locations</td>
<td>EON</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Child restraints</td>
<td>Event data recorders</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Child restraint systems</td>
<td>Exit lighting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Climate control</td>
<td>Exterior care</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Climate control systems</td>
<td>Exterior light</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clock</td>
<td>Exterior lighting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuring RDS</td>
<td>Exterior mirrors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Connecting a Bluetooth music device</td>
<td>F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Connection</td>
<td>Fault</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Control elements overview</td>
<td>Favourite lists</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Control indicators</td>
<td>First aid kit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Control of the vehicle</td>
<td>Fixed air vents</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Controls</td>
<td>Fog light</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Convex shape</td>
<td>Fog lights</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coolant and antifreeze</td>
<td>Folding mirrors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cruise control</td>
<td>Front airbag system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cupholders</td>
<td>Front fog lights</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Curtain airbag system</td>
<td>Front seats</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Fuel</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Pollen filter ........................................ 214
Power outlets .................................... 70
Power steering ................................... 78
Power steering fluid ............................ 251
Power windows .................................. 34
Preheating ........................................ 79

Q
Quickheat .......................................... 213

R
Radio
Radio data system (RDS) ............ 135
activating ........................................ 128
autostore lists .......................... 129
favourite lists .............................. 130
selecting the waveband .............. 128
station lists .................................. 131
station search ................................ 128
usage ............................................. 128
waveband menus ............................ 131
Radio data system (RDS) ............ 135
Radio Frequency Identification
(RFID) .................................................. 318
Radio remote control .................... 20
Rain sensor ....................................... 80
RDS .................................................... 135
Reading lights .................................. 105
Rear floor storage cover ............... 61
Rear fog light ................................. 80
Rear fog lights ............................... 103
Rear seats ........................................ 41
Rear storage .................................. 59
Rear view camera ......................... 234
Rear window wiper/washer ............ 69
Recharging the phone battery ...... 198
Recommended fluids and
lubricants ......................................... 296
Refuelling ....................................... 237
Regionalization ............................. 135
Retrieving stations ....................... 129, 130
Reversing lights ......................... 104
Ride control systems .................... 228
Roof ................................................. 36
Roof load ........................................ 65
Roof rack ........................................ 64
Route guidance .............................. 179, 186
S
Safety net ......................................... 62
SD card ............................................ 186
Seat adjustment ............................. 7, 39
Seat belt .......................................... 8
Seat belt reminder ......................... 76
Seat belts ....................................... 41
Seat position ................................... 38
Selecting the waveband ............. 128
Selector lever .................................. 224
Service .......................................... 214, 290
Service display ............................. 72
Service information ...................... 290
Service schedules ......................... 291
Service vehicle soon .................... 77
Setting the navigation volume ...... 156
Setting the volume ......................... 116
Side airbag system ....................... 48
Side blind spot alert ....................... 232
Sidelights ....................................... 100
Side turn signal lights ................. 262
Spare wheel ................................... 282
Speech recognition ....................... 192, 193
activating ....................................... 193
phone control ............................... 193
usage ............................................. 193
volume for voice output ............. 193
Speed compensated volume ......... 116
Speedometer .................................. 71
Speller function .............................. 165
Starting and operating ................. 216
Starting CD replay ......................... 141
Starting off .................................... 16
Starting the engine ..................... 217
Station search ............................... 128
Steering wheel adjustment .......... 9, 66
Steering wheel controls ............... 66
Stop-start system ......................... 219
Storage .......................................... 56
Storage compartments .................. 56
Storing stations ............................ 129, 130
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>T</th>
<th>Turn signal</th>
<th>76</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Tyre chains</td>
<td>275</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Tyre designations</td>
<td>270</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Tyre pressure</td>
<td>270</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Tyre pressure monitoring system</td>
<td>79, 271</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Tyre pressure monitor operation</td>
<td>272</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Tyre pressures</td>
<td>315</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Tyre repair kit</td>
<td>276</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>U</td>
<td>Ultrasonic parking assist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Updating station lists</td>
<td>131</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Upholstery</td>
<td>289</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Upshift</td>
<td>78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Usage. 116, 128, 141, 146, 153, 156</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>USB port important information</td>
<td>146</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>iPod functions</td>
<td>148</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>playing saved audio files</td>
<td>148</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>supported iPod models</td>
<td>146</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>User defined POIs</td>
<td>165</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Using the AUX input</td>
<td>146</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Using the CD player</td>
<td>141</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Using the digital picture frame</td>
<td>153</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Using the Infotainment system</td>
<td>116</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Using the navigation system</td>
<td>156</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Using the radio</td>
<td>128</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Using the USB port</td>
<td>146</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Using this manual</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>V</td>
<td>Vehicle battery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Vehicle checks</td>
<td>241</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Vehicle data recording and privacy</td>
<td>317</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Vehicle dimensions</td>
<td>312</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Vehicle Identification Number</td>
<td>299</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Vehicle jack</td>
<td>269</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Vehicle messages</td>
<td>87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Vehicle personalisation</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Vehicle security</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Vehicle storage</td>
<td>240</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Vehicle tools</td>
<td>269</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Vehicle unlocking</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Vehicle weight</td>
<td>307</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ventilation</td>
<td>206</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Voice recognition</td>
<td>192</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Volume for voice output</td>
<td>193</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Volume settings</td>
<td>125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>W</td>
<td>Warning chimes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Warning lights</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Warning triangle</td>
<td>63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Washer and wiper systems</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Washer fluid</td>
<td>251</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Waveband menus</td>
<td>131</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Wheel changing</td>
<td>279</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Wheel covers</td>
<td>275</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Service</td>
<td>Page</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wheels and tyres</td>
<td>270</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Windows</td>
<td>34</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Windscreen</td>
<td>34</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Windscreen wiper/washer</td>
<td>67</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Winter tyres</td>
<td>270</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wiper blade replacement</td>
<td>254</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>